



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

ETON SCHOOL BOOKS

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY

E. P. WILLIAMS,

ETON COLLEGE, AND NO. 5, BRIDGE STREET, BLACKFRIARS,
LONDON.

(Only five doors from Fleet Street:)

And to be had through any Bookseller in Town or Country.

CATALOGUES at large forwarded *gratis* by Post to any part of
the kingdom, on application by Letter to the Publisher.

GREEK.

Eton Greek Grammar:

Pars I. Rudimenta Minora; Pars II. Syntaxis, 12mo. bd. 4s.
Rudimenta Minima. 12mo. cl. 1s. 6d.
Jelf's Appendix, abd. from his Larger Grammar. 12mo.
bd. 3s.

Eton Greek Exercise Books:-

- I. Exempla Minora Græca: a Greek Exercise Book,
adapted to the Rules of the Greek Syntax used at Eton,
by C. D. Yonge, B.A., author of "English-Greek Lexicon,"
&c., 12mo. cl. 2s. 6d.
- II. Exempla Majora Græca: consisting of Longer Sentences,
adapted to the same Rules, 12mo. cl. 3s. 6d.

Græcæ Grammatices Rudimenta.

(Still used in many Schools). Bd. 4s.

Æsopi Fabulæ,

Cum Vers. Lat. 12mo. bd. 3s.

The Latin Version may be omitted (as used at Eton).

Aristophanis Ranæ,

Textu fere ad Dindorfianum expresso, et expurgato. 8vo.
sewed, 2s., or interleaved, cloth, 3s. 6d.

Epigrammatum Græcorum et Poematum Delectus,

Cum Versione et Notis, opera T. Johnson. 3s. 6d.

The Latin Version may be omitted (as used at Eton).

Euripidis Cyclops, ex. Ed. Dindorfii, ex- purgata.

Interleaved, in cloth, 4s.

ETON SCHOOL BOOKS PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY E. P. WILLIAMS.

Pindari Carmina, ad fidem Textus Böckhiani:

Pars I. Continens Odas Olympicas: Notas quasdam Anglice scriptas adjecit Gulielmus Gifford Cookesley, A. M., Regiæ Scholæ Etonensise Magistris Adjutoribus. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Pars II. Odæ Pythiæ. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Pars III. Odæ Nemeæ et Isthmiæ. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Pars IV. Fragmenta et Index. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

The four Parts may be had bound in 2 vols., 8vo. cloth, £1 8s.

Pindari Carmina quædam Selecta,

Ex Recensione Böckhii. 8vo., sd. 2s. 6d.

(Read in the Head Master's Division at Eton).

Poetæ Græci:

Pars I. Selecta ex

Homero (Odys.). Mimnermo Moscho Musæo.

Hesiodo Bione Meleagro

Adjectæ sunt Notæ quædam Latine scriptæ. 8vo. cloth, 4s.

Pars II. Selecta ex

Homer. (Hym.). Tyrtæo Simonide Euripide

Theocrito Sapphono Pindaro Platone

Callimacho Alcæo Bacchylide Erinna

Apollonio Stesichoro Callistrato Aristotele

Callino Solone Hybria Cleanthe.

Archilocho Theognide Ariphron

Cum Notis Latine scriptis. 8vo. cloth, 8s.

Scriptores Græci:

Selectæ ex Herodoto. Thucydide, Xenophonte, Platone, et Luciano. 8vo. bd. 9s.

ETON GEOGRAPHICAL BOOKS,

BY ARROWSMITH.

Eton Comparative Atlas:

53 Maps, large 4to. half-bound, 2l. 2s.

Outlines to the same, shaded, 7s.

Index to the Atlas:

Parts I. and II. Royal 8vo., cloth, 7s. each; the two Parts together, cloth, 12s.

Compendium of Ancient and Modern Geography:

Illustrated with Plans, Diagrams, etc. 8vo. bd. 17s. 6d.



600062642Q

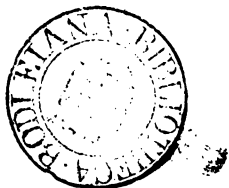
AN INTRODUCTION
TO THE
LATIN TONGUE,
FOR THE USE OF YOUTH.

A NEW EDITION.

By C. D. YONGE, B.A.

AUTHOR OF

"AN ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON," "YONGE'S GRADUS AD PARNASSUM,"
ETC. ETC.



ETON,

PRINTED AND SOLD BY E. P. WILLIAMS:

SOLD ALSO AT THE ETON WAREHOUSE, NO. 5, BRIDGE STREET,
BLACKFRIARS, LONDON.

MDCCCLI.

305. c. 64.



NEW ETON LATIN GRAMMAR
AND
GREEK AND LATIN EXERCISE BOOKS,

(With the Sanction of the Eton Authorities,)

BY C. D. YONGE, B. A.

Author of 'An English-Greek Lexicon,' 'Gradus ad Parnassum,'
&c. &c.

Just Published, 12mo. Price 2s.

THE ETON LATIN GRAMMAR, a NEW EDITION, corrected
and improved.

EXEMPLA MINORA LATINA: a Latin Exercise Book, adapted
to the above, and to Edward VI. Latin Grammar, with Index of
the Words used, at the End, 12mo. 2s.

EXEMPLA MAJORA LATINA: Longer Exercises, adapted to the
same Latin Grammars, 12mo. 3s.

EXEMPLA MINORA GRÆCA: a Greek Exercise Book, adapted
to the Rules of the Greek Syntax used at Eton, &c. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

EXEMPLA MAJORA GRÆCA: consisting of Longer Sentences,
adapted to the same Rules, 12mo. 3s. 6d.

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY E. P. WILLIAMS, ETON,

AND 5, BRIDGE STREET, BLACKFRIARS, LONDON;

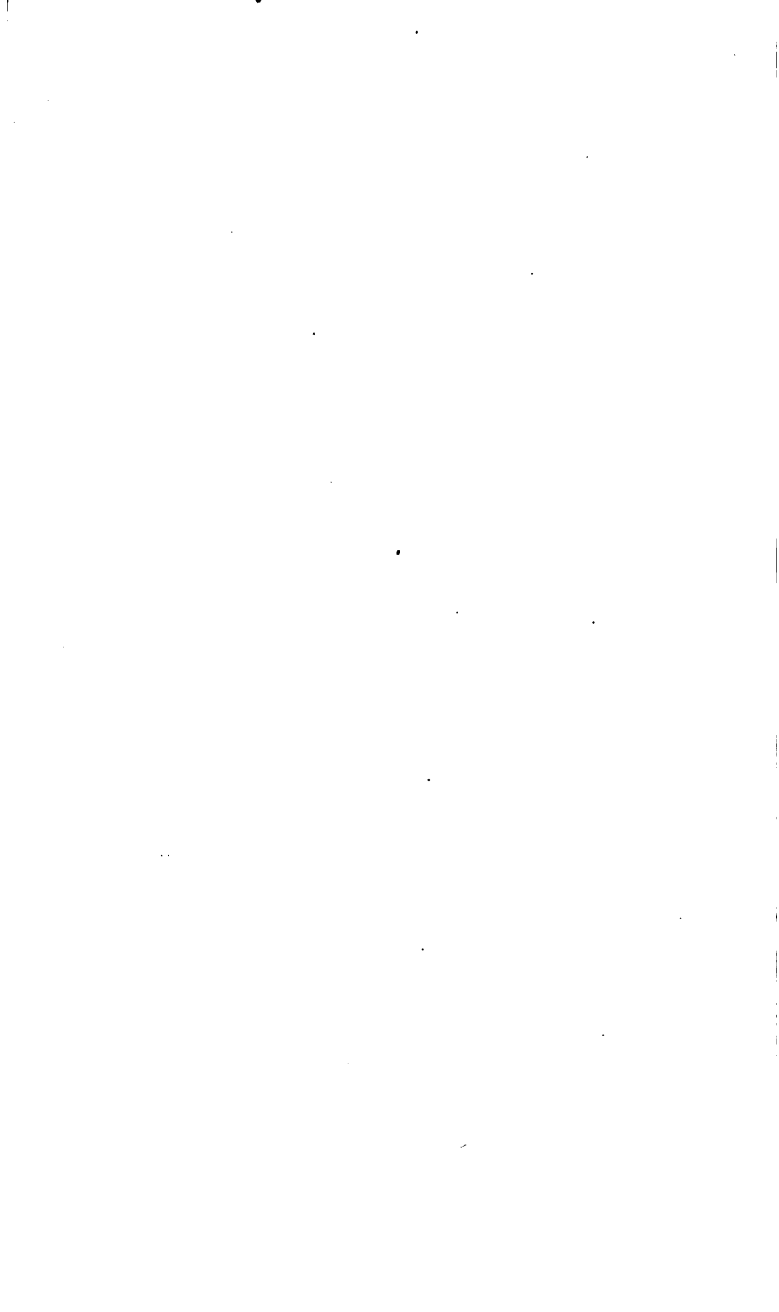
AND TO BE HAD THRO' ANY BOOKSELLER.



INDEX.

	Pag.		Pag.
Alphabet	3	QUÆ GENUS ; or, Nouns He-	
Parts of Speech	4	teroclite	74
NOUNS—		AS IN PRÆSENTI ; or, the Per-	
Numbers, Cases, &c.	ib.	fect and Supines of Verbs	77
Declension of Substantives	6	SYNTAXIS—	
" Adjectives	14	Concordantiæ Tres	85
Comparison of Adjectives	17	Nominum Constructio—	
Pronouns	19	Substantiva	89
Declension of	20	Adjectiva	90
VERBS—		Pronominum Constructio	95
Voices	23	Verborum Constructio	96
Moods, Tenses, &c.	24	Verba Infinita	104
Gerunds and Supines	26	Gerundia	106
Participles	ib.	Supina	107
Numbers and Persons	27	Verba Impersonalia	ib.
The Verb <i>Esse</i>	ib.	De Tempore	108
Declension of Verbs <i>Regular</i>	30	Spatium Loci	109
Conjugation of ditto—Active	31	Nomina Locorum	ib.
" " Passive	44	Adverbia	110
Declension of <i>Irregular</i>		Conjunctionum Constructio	111
Verbs	56	De Relativo	115
Conjugation of ditto	57	Præpositiones	116
Defective Verbs	62	Interjectiones	118
Adverbs	64	PROSODIA	119
Conjunctions	ib.		
Prepositions	ib.	Propria quæ Maribus	
Interjections	66	construed	129
The Three Concords	ib.	Nouns Heteroclitite construed	138
		As in Præsenti construed	142
PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS ; or,		Syntaxis construed	156
the Genders of Nouns	70	Prosodia construed	205





AN INTRODUCTION
TO THE
LATIN TONGUE.

The Latin Letters are thus written :

Capitals.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

Small, or common.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

Of these Letters, six are named *Vowels* ; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

The rest are called *consonants*.

A *vowel* makes a full and perfect sound of itself, as *e.*

A *consonant* cannot be sounded without a vowel, as *be.*

Consonants are divided into liquids, double letters, and mutes.

The *liquids* are *l, m, n, r* : The *double letters* are *x, z* :

The remaining letters are called *mutes*.

A *syllable* is a distinct sound of one, or more letters, pronounced in a breath.

A *diphthong* is the sound of two vowels in one syllable.

There are six diphthongs, *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe.**

* Besides these six we meet with *ua, us, ui, uo*, sounded in one syllable, occurring only after the consonants, *g, q, or s* ; but they want one distinguishing property of diphthongs, for diphthongs are naturally long in quantity, while these are sometimes long and sometimes short. And some consider that in these combinations *u* should be considered a consonant, and written *v*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech are Seven :

Noun, Pronoun, Verb, declined ;

Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, undeclined.

OF A NOUN.

NOUNS are of two kinds, *Substantives* and *Adjectives*.

A *substantive* expresses by itself alone the object of which we are speaking ; as, *hōmo*,* a man ; *ōrātor*, an orator ; *liber*, the book.

An *adjective* always requires to be joined to a substantive, of which it shows the nature or quality ; and is either a common adjective, as *bōnus puer*, a good boy ; or a *participle* (formed from, and being part of a verb) as, *fūrens fœmina*, a woman raging.

NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have two numbers ; the singular, and the plural.

The singular speaketh but of one ; as *pāter*, a father :

The plural speaketh of more than one ; as, *patres*, fathers.

CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have six cases in each number :

The nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, the vocative, and the ablative.

The *nominative* case names the subject of a sentence, and marks the quarter from which an action proceeds ; as, *magister docet*, the master teaches.

The *genitive* case denotes connection between two objects, and in English is commonly translated by “*of*,” or by ‘*s*’ ; as, *doctrina magistri*, the learning of the master, or, the master’s learning.

The *dative* case denotes that with reference to which the subject (named by the nominative case) acts ; or in

* A crescent (˘) placed over a vowel denotes that the syllable is *short* ; a straight line (ˉ) denotes that it is *long*.

reference to which it possesses this or that quality : and in English it is commonly expressed by the sign “to” or “for,” pointing out the person to whose advantage or disadvantage the thing spoken of tends ; as, *do librum magistro*, I give the book to the master ; *patriæ suæ idoneus*, useful to his country.

The *accusative* case expresses the object, whether person or thing, affected by the action spoken of ; as, *amo magistrum*, I love the master ; *condo domum*, I build a house.

The *vocative* case is used in addressing people or things ; as, *O magister*, O master.

The *ablative* case serves to denote the person or thing from whom or from which anything is taken ; and also many other relations of substantives, which are expressed in most other languages by prepositions, such as, “in,” “with,” “from,” or “by.” Also, the word “than” after an adjective of the comparative degree is often a sign of the ablative case ; as, *cum magistro*, with the master ; *in Italiâ*, in Italy ; *vir fortior Cæsare*, a man braver than Cæsar.

GENDERS AND ARTICLES.

The GENDERS of nouns are three ; the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

Some substantives are called *common*, being such as denote an occupation or quality common to both males and females, and admitting adjectives of either the masculine or feminine gender to be joined with them, according as the subject is male or female ; as, *meus parens* or *mea parens*, “my parent,” according as the father or mother is spoken of.

Some are called *epicene*, being such as have only one grammatical gender, which comprehends both sexes ; as, *hic passer*, this sparrow ; *hæc aquila*, this eagle ; without regard to the difference of sex.

Some are called *doubtful*, being such as are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, without regard to the actual sex of the animal spoken of ; as, *hic anguis* or *hæc anguis*, this snake.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

THERE are FIVE declensions of substantives, distinguished by the ending of the genitive case.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

The first declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *æ*, and has the nominative case ending in *ā*, of either the masculine or feminine gender; as, *scrība*, a scribe; *via*, a way; or, (in the case of words derived from Greek, being mostly proper names) in *as* or *es* of the masculine, and in *ē* of the feminine gender. These last make the genitive singular to end in *ēs*.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N.	Mūs- <i>a</i> , a song,	N. Mūs- <i>æ</i> , songs,
G.	Mūs- <i>æ</i> , of a song,	G. Mūs- <i>arum</i> , of songs,
D.	Mūs- <i>æ</i> , to a song,	D. Mūs- <i>is</i> , to songs,
Acc.	Mūs- <i>am</i> , a song,	A. Mūs- <i>as</i> , songs,
V.	Mūs- <i>a</i> , o song,	V. Mūs- <i>æ</i> , o songs,
Abl.	Mūs- <i>ā</i> , from a song.	A. Mūs- <i>is</i> , from songs.

N.	Ænē <i>as</i> ,	Anchī <i>ses</i> ,	Pēnēlōpē,
G.	Ænē <i>æ</i> ,	Anchī <i>sæ</i> ,	Pēnēlōpēs,
D.	Ænē <i>æ</i> ,	Anchī <i>sæ</i> ,	Pēnēlōpæ,
Acc.	Ænē <i>an</i> ,	Anchī <i>sēn</i> ,	Pēnēlōpēn,
V.	Ænē <i>ā</i> ,	Anchī <i>sā</i> ,*	Pēnēlōpē,
Abl.	Ænē <i>ā</i> .	Anchī <i>sā</i> .	Pēnēlōpē.

One or two feminine substantives in *ā*, derived from masculines in *us*, make the dat. and abl. plural in *abus* as well as in *is*; as, *filia*, a daughter; *filiabus* or *filiis*.

Also feminine proper names ending in *ā*, derived from the Greek, are used in Latin (especially by the poets) with either accusative *an* or *am*; and *an*, when used, follows the quantity of the Greek accusative, so that we find Maiān, Electrān.

* Horace in his Satires uses this vocative case with *ā*.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The second declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *i*, and the nominative to end in *ēr* and *ir* of the masculine gender only ; as, *puer*, a boy ; *māgister*, a teacher ; *vir*, a man : in *us*, usually of the masculine gender ; as, *dōmīnus*, a master ; but sometimes of the feminine ; as, *hūmus*, the ground ; or of the neuter, as, *vīrus*,* poison ; and in *um* of the neuter gender only, as, *regnum*, a kingdom ; and (in the case of a few proper names derived from the Greek) in *ōs* of the masculine or feminine gender, as, *Dēlōs* ; and in *ōn* of the neuter, as, *Ilīōn*.

Singular.

- N. *Puer*, a boy,
 G. *Puēri*, of a boy,
 D. *Puēro*, to a boy,
 A. *Puērum*, a boy,
 V. *Puer*, o boy,
 A. *Puēro*, by a boy.

Singular.

- N. *Dōmīnus*, a master,
 G. *Dōmīni*, of a master,
 D. *Dōmīno*, to a master,
 A. *Dōmīnum*, a master,
 V. *Dōmīne*, o master,
 A. *Dōmīno*, by a master.

Singular.

- N. *Māgister*, a teacher,
 G. *Māgistri*, of a teacher,
 D. *Māgistro*, to a teacher,
 A. *Māgistrum*, a teacher,
 V. *Māgister*, o teacher,
 A. *Māgistro*, by a teacher.

Plural.

- N. *Puēri*, boys,
 G. *Puērōrum*, of boys,
 D. *Puēris*, to boys,
 A. *Puēros*, boys,
 V. *Puēri*, o boys,
 A. *Puēris*, by boys.

Plural.

- N. *Dōmīni*, masters,
 G. *Dōmīnōrum*, of masters,
 D. *Dōmīnis*, to masters,
 A. *Dōmīnos*, masters,
 V. *Dōmīni*, o masters,
 A. *Dōmīnis*, by masters.

Plural.

- N. *Māgistri*, teachers,
 G. *Māgistrōrum*, of teachers,
 D. *Māgistris*, to teachers,
 A. *Māgistros*, teachers,
 V. *Māgistri*, o teachers,
 A. *Māgistris*, by teachers.

* Nouns of the neuter gender of this declension ending in *us* make the accusative and vocative singular to end in *us*, and have no plural ; except that Lucretius has *Pēlāgē* as the accusative plural of *Pēlāgus*.

Singular.

N. Regn-um, *a kingdom*,
 G. Regn-i, *of a kingdom*,
 D. Regn-o, *to a kingdom*,
 A. Regn-um, *a kingdom*,
 V. Regn-um, *o kingdom*,
 A. Regn-o, *from a kingdom*.

N. Dēlōs,
 G. Dēli,
 D. Dēlo,
 A. Dēlōn,
 V. Dēlē,
 A. Dēlo.

Plural.

N. Regn-a, *kingdoms*,
 G. Regn-orum, *of kingdoms*,
 D. Regn-is, *to kingdoms*,
 A. Regn-a, *kingdoms*,
 V. Regn-a, *o kingdoms*,
 A. Regn-is, *from kingdoms*.

Iliōn,
 Ilii,
 Ilio,
 Iliōn,
 Iliōn,
 Ilio.

The genitive case of words ending in *ius* or *ium* was originally *i*, not *ii*, and *ii* is never used by Virgil or Horace (except in the case of the adjective *egrēgii*) though it occurs occasionally in Ovid.

The vocative of words ending in *us* terminates in *e*, except *Deus*, God, which makes *Deus* in the vocative; and words in *ius*, which make the vocative in *i*; as, *filius*, a son, *fili*. But proper names derived from the Greek ending in *ius* make the vocative in *e*; as, *Cynthius*, *Cynthie*.

All nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases alike in both numbers. And all nouns whatever, except those of the first declension ending in *as* or *es*, and those of the second ending in *us* or *ōs*, make the nominative and vocative alike in both numbers.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The third declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *is*, and in the nominative it ends in *e*, *o* (and in words derived from the Greek in *a*, *i*, and *y*), *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, and *x*, of which those ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *t*, are of the neuter gender only (except *Prænestē*, which, as the name of a town, is used also in the feminine.) Those with the other terminations are of any gender, except that those ending in *o*, *ns*, and *x*, are never neuter.

Of nouns of this declension some are *parisyllabic* (that is, they do not increase in the genitive case,) as, *nūbes, nūbis*; some are *imparisyllabic* (that is, they do increase in the genitive case,) as, *lapis, lapidis*.* Some

* In the case of imparisyllabic words there is a great variety in the manner in which the increase in the genitive case is formed; the following are some of the principal varieties. Words ending in—

a make the gen. in *ātis*, as *poēma, poemātis*.

o *īnis*, as *virgo, virgīnis*.

ōnis, as *leo, leōnis*.

ōnis, as *Măcēdo, Măcēdōnis*.

y *yōs*, as *Tīphys, Tīphyōs*.

c *ctis*, as *lac, lactis*.

l *lis*, as *ănīmal, ănīmălis*; *sal, sălis*; *mel, mellis*.

n { *an* *ānis*, as *Titān, Titānis*.

ēn *ēnis*, as *Sirēn, Sirēnis*.

in *īnis*, as *Delphīn, Delphīnis*.

en *īnis*, as *carmēn, carminis*.

on { *ōnis*, as *Mărăthon, Mărăthōnis*.

ōnis, as *cănōn, cănōnis*.

r { *ontis*, as *Xenophon, Xenophontis*.

by adding *is*, as *calcar, calcăris*.

jūbar, jubăris.

carcer, carcēris.

ver, vēris.

hōnor, hōnōris.

æquor, æquōris.

fur, furis.

murmur, murmuris; but *far* makes

farris; *īter, ītinēris*; *Jūpiter,*

Jōvis.

cor, cordis; *rōbur, rōbōris*.

as in *ātis*, as *pietās, pietātis*:

but in words derived from the Greek—

 in *ădis*, as *lampās, lampădis*.

antis, as *gīgas, gigantis*.

We find also *mas, măris*; *vas, văsis*; *vas, vădis*; *as, assis*.

es in *itis*, as *mīlēs, mīlītis*.

parisyllabic nouns ending in *is* make the accusative case singular to end in *im*,* as, *turris*, *turrim*; and these and

Words ending in

ēs make the gen. in *ētis*, *as* *sēgēs*, *sēgētis*.

We find also *quies*, *quiētis*; *pes*, *pēdis*; *hæres*, *hærēdis*;
Cērēs, *Cērēris*.

is in *ēris*, *as* *cīnis*, *cīnēris*.

īdis, *as* *lapis*, *lāpīdis*.

We find also *lis*, *lītis*; *sanguis*, *sanguīnis*; *glis*, *glīris*.

n } by changing *s* into *tis*, { *as* *pārens*, *pārentis*.
rs } { *ars*, *artis*.

So also we find *trabs*, *trābis*; *urbs*, *urbis*; *hyems*, *hyēmis*;
coeles, *coelībis*; *princeps*, *prin-*
cīpis; but *frons* (a leaf,) *frondis*;
glans, *glandis*.

ōs in *ōris*, *as* *flōs*, *flōris*.

ōtis, *as* *dos*, *dōtis*.

also *os* (a bone,) *ossis*.

us, when neut. in *ēris*, *as* *ōpus*, *ōpēris*.

ōris, *as* *pēcus*, *pēcōris*.

when fem. in *ūtis*, *as* *virtūs*, *virtūtis*.

ūdis, *as* *pēcus*, *pēcūdis*.

We find also *Vēnus*, *Vēnēris*; *grus*, *gruis*: and the mascu-
line *mus*, *mūris*.

x in *cis*, *as* *pax*, *pācis*.

fax, *fācis*.

vervex, *vervēcis*,

nex, *nēcis*.

cornix, *cornīcis*.

cālix, *cālīcis*.

vox, *vōcis*.

Cappadox, *Cappādōcis*.

lux, *lūcis*.

nux, *nūcis*.

lynx, *lynxis*.

But *ex* makes also *īcis*, *as* *lātex*, *lātīcis*; we find also *rex*,
rēgis; *grex*, *grēgis*; *rēmex*, *rēmīgis*; *nix*, *nīvis*; *nox*, *noctis*;
Phryx, *Phrýgis*.

* Some, being chiefly Greek proper names, make the accusative singular in *in*, as *Pāris*, *Pārīn*, and these make the vocative in *ī*, as *Pārī*. Some

some others make the ablative to end both in *i* and *e*, as, *puppis*, abl. *puppi* and *puppe* (one, *vis*, makes only *vi*.) All nouns of the neuter gender form their nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in *a*; those which end in *al*, *ar* (except *far*,) and *e*, make them in *ia*. And such words, and most parisyllabic substantives of this declension form their genitive case plural in *ium*.*

Proper names ending in *as*, *antis*, make the vocative case singular to end in *ā*, as *Calchas*, *Calchantis*, voc. *Calchā*; and those in *es*, *is*, make it in *ēs* and in *ē*, and make the accusative in *em* or in *ēn*, as, *Sophocles*, *Sophoclis*, accus. *Sophoclem* or *Sophoclen*, voc. *Sophocles* or *Sophoclē*.

Singular.

- N. Nūbes, *a cloud*,
G. Nūbis, *of a cloud*,
D. Nūbi, *to a cloud*,
A. Nūbem, *a cloud*,
V. Nūbes, *o cloud*,
A. Nūbe, *by a cloud*.

Singular.

- N. Lāpis, *a stone*,
G. Lāpidis, *of a stone*,
D. Lāpidi, *to a stone*,
A. Lāpidem, *a stone*,
V. Lāpis, *o stone*,
A. Lāpide, *by a stone*.

Plural.

- N. Nūbes, *clouds*,
G. Nūbium, *of clouds*,
D. Nūbibus, *to clouds*,
A. Nūbes, *clouds*,
V. Nūbes, *o clouds*,
A. Nūbibus, *by clouds*.

Plural.

- N. Lāpides, *stones*,
G. Lāpidum, *of stones*,
D. Lāpidibus, *to stones*,
A. Lāpides, *stones*,
V. Lāpides, *o stones*,
A. Lāpidibus, *by stones*.

imparisyllabic words also, derived from the Greek, being chiefly proper names, make the accusative singular to end in *ā*; and if they have a plural number, the plural nominative ends in *ēs*, and the accusative in *ēs*, as *Pallās*, the goddess, *Pallādā*; *Pallās*, the man, *Pallantā*; *lampās*, acc. sing. *lampādā*, nom. and voc. pl. *lampādēs*, acc. *lampādēs*. These words also sometimes are used by the poets with the dative case plural in *āsin*, as *Trōās*, a Trojan woman, *Trōādā*, *Trōādēs*, *Trōāsin*, *Trōādēs*.

* *Vūtes*, *sēnex*, *jūvēnis*, *āpis*, *cānis*, *vōlūcris*, are exceptions to this rule, and form their genitive plural in *um*, not in *ium*. Most nouns of one syllable make the genitive plural in *ium*; those of two or more syllables ending in *ns* or *rs*, make it both in *tum* and *um*, the former being the most common form in prose.

Singular.

N. *ōpus, a work,*
 G. *ōpēris, of a work,*
 D. *ōpēri, to a work,*
 A. *ōpus, a work,*
 V. *ōpus, o work,*
 A. *ōpēre, by a work.*

Plural.

N. *ōpēra, works,*
 G. *ōpērum, of works,*
 D. *ōpēribus, to works,*
 A. *ōpēra, works,*
 V. *ōpēra, o works,*
 A. *ōpēribus, by works.*

Singular.

N. *Māre, a sea,*
 G. *Māria, of a sea,*
 D. *Māri, to a sea,*
 A. *Māre, a sea,*
 V. *Māre, o sea,*
 A. *Māri, or Māre, by the sea.*

Plural.

N. *Māria, seas,*
 G. *Mārium, of seas,*
 D. *Māribus, to seas,*
 A. *Māria, seas,*
 V. *Māria, o seas,*
 A. *Māribus, by seas.*

Besides these words, there are some proper names derived from the Greek, which belong mainly to the second declension, but have some cases (especially in poetry,) which belong to the third :

N. Orpheus,
 G. Orphei, or Orpheōs,
 D. Orpheo, or Orphēi, contr. Orphēi,
 A. Orphēum, or Orphēā, contr. Orphaē,
 V. Orpheu,
 A. Orpheo.

Sappho is thus declined :

N. Sappho.
 G. Sapphūs,
 D. Sappho,
 A. Sappho,
 V. Sappho,
 A. Sappho.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

The fourth declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ūs*, and in the nominative ends in *us*, being of either the masculine or feminine gender ; or in *u*, of the neuter gender.

Singular.

- N. Grăd-us, *a step*,
 G. Grăd-ûs, *of a step*,
 D. Grăd-ui, *to a step*,
 A. Grăd-um, *a step*,
 V. Grăd-us, *o step*,
 A. Grăd-u, *with a step*.

Plural.

- N. Grăd-us, *steps*,
 G. Grăd-uum, *of steps*,
 D. Grăd-ibus, *to steps*,
 A. Grăd-us, *steps*,
 V. Grăd-us, *o steps*,
 A. Grăd-ibus, *with steps*.

The dative in *ui* is sometimes contracted into *û*, both in poetry and prose, as, *Parce metû*.—Virg.

Singular.

- N. Cornu, *a horn*,
 G. Cornûs, *of a horn*,*
 D. Cornui, *to a horn*,*
 A. Cornu, *a horn*,
 V. Cornu, *o horn*,
 A. Cornu, *with a horn*.

Plural.

- N. Cornua, *horns*,
 G. Cornuum, *of horns*,
 D. Cornibus, *to horns*,
 A. Cornua, *horns*,
 V. Cornua, *o horns*,
 A. Cornibus, *with horns*.

Dõmus, a house, belongs partly to the fourth declension and partly to the second.

Singular.

- N. Dõmus, *a house*,
 G. Dõmûs, *of a house*,
 D. Dõmui & dõmo, *to a house*,
 A. Dõmum, *a house*,
 V. Dõmus, *o house*,
 A. Dõmo, *by a house*.

Plural.

- N. Dõmus, *houses*,
 G. Dõmuum and dõmorum, *of houses*,
 D. Dõmibus, *to houses*,
 A. Dõmos, *houses*,
 V. Dõmus, *o houses*,
 A. Dõmibus, *by houses*.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The fifth declension makes the genitive and dative cases singular to end in *ei*, and in the nominative ends in *es*, being always of the feminine gender, with the exception of *dies*, day, which is masculine and feminine in the singular, and only masculine in the plural; as,

Singular.

- N. Făci-es, *a face*,
 G. Făci-ei, *of a face*,
 D. Făci-ei, *to a face*,
 A. Făci-em, *a face*,
 V. Făci-es, *o face*,
 A. Făci-ē, *from a face*.

Plural.

- N. Făci-es, *faces*,
 G. Făci-erum, *of faces*,
 D. Făci-ēbus, *to faces*,
 A. Făci-es, *faces*,
 V. Făci-es, *o faces*,
 A. Făci-ēbus, *from faces*.

* But the genitive and dative cases singular of words in *u* are scarcely ever found.

The termination of the genitive singular in *ei* is sometimes contracted in poetry into *ē*, as, “*Libra diē somnique pares ubi fecerit horas.*”—Virg.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives are declined like substantives, and have either three terminations, masculine, feminine, and neuter; or two, the one masculine and feminine, and the other neuter; or one termination only, serving for the three genders. Most adjectives of three terminations are declined in the masculine and neuter genders, like substantives of the second declension, and in the feminine like substantives of the first declension; as, *bōnus*, good; *tēner*, tender; *āter*, black.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bōn-us,	bon-a,	bon-um,	N. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
G. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-i,	G. Bon-ōrum,	bon-ārum,	bon-
D. Bon-o,	bon-æ,	bon-o,	D. Bon-is,		[ōrum,
A. Bon-um,	bon-am,	bon-um,	A. Bon-os,	bon-as,	bon-a,
V. Bon-e,	bon-a,	bon-um,	V. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
A. Bon-o,	bon-ā,	bon-o.	A. Bon-is.		

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Tēn-er,	tenē-ra,	tenē-rum,	N. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ra,
G. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ri,	G. Tene-rōrum,	tene-rārum,	
D. Tene-ro,	tene-ræ,	tene-ro,	D. Tene-ris,		[tene-rōrum,
A. Tene-rum,	-ram,	-rum,	A. Tene-ros,	tene-ras,	tene-ra,
V. Ten-er,	tene-ra,	tene-rum,	V. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ra,
A. Tene-ro,	tene-rā,	tene-ro.	A. Tene-ris.		

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Āter,	atra,	atrum,	N. Atri,	atræ,	atra,
G. Atri,	atræ,	atri,	G. Atorum,	atrarum,	atrorum,
D. Atro,	atræ,	atro,	D. Atris,		
A. Atrum,	atram,	atrum,	A. Atros,	atras,	atra,
V. Ater,	atra,	atrum,	V. Atri,	atræ,	atra,
A. Atro,	atra,	atro.	A. Atris.		

Some adjectives in *er*, however, are declined in all the three genders like substantives of the third declension ; as, *acer*, active.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Ācer</i> ,	<i>acris</i> ,	<i>acre</i> ,	N. <i>Acres</i> ,	<i>acres</i> ,	<i>acria</i> ,
G. <i>Acris</i> ,			G. <i>Acrium</i> ,		
D. <i>Acri</i> ,			D. <i>Acribus</i> ,		
A. <i>Acrem</i> ,	<i>acrem</i> ,	<i>acre</i> ,	A. <i>Acres</i> ,	<i>acres</i> ,	<i>acria</i> ,
V. <i>Acer</i> ,	<i>acris</i> ,	<i>acre</i> ,	V. <i>Acres</i> ,	<i>acres</i> ,	<i>acria</i> ,
A. <i>Acri</i> .			A. <i>Acribus</i> .		

Unus one, *solus* alone, *totus* the whole, *ullus* any, *nullus* none, *alter** the other, *uter* whether of the two, make the genitive case singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i* ; as,†

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Ūn-us</i> ,	<i>un-a</i> ,	<i>un-um</i> ,	N. <i>Ūn-i</i> ,	<i>un-æ</i> ,	<i>un-a</i> ,
G. <i>Ūn-ius</i> ,			G. <i>Ūn-ōrum</i> ,	<i>-ārum</i> ,	<i>-ōrum</i> ,
D. <i>Ūn-i</i> ,			D. <i>Ūn-is</i> ,		
A. <i>Ūn-um</i> ,	<i>un-am</i> ,	<i>un-um</i> ,	A. <i>Ūn-os</i> ,	<i>un-as</i> ,	<i>un-a</i> ,
V. <i>Ūn-e</i> ,	<i>un-a</i> ,	<i>un-um</i> ,	V. <i>Ūn-i</i> ,	<i>un-æ</i> ,	<i>un-a</i> ,
A. <i>Ūn-o</i> ,	<i>un-â</i> ,	<i>un-o</i> .	A. <i>Ūn-is</i> .		

Note. *Unus* has no plural number, unless it be joined to a noun that has not the singular number ; as, *unæ literæ*, a letter ; *una mænia*, a wall.

Adjectives of two terminations are declined like substantives of the third declension, as *tristis* sad, *melior* better.

* *Alteræ* is also used as the dat. sing. fem. of *alter* by Corn. Nepos.

† So also words compounded of *uter*, as *neuter*, neither ; *uterque*, each, fem. *utroque*, neut. *utrumque*. *Alius*, another, also makes *alius* in the genitive case ; it also makes *aliud*, nom. and acc. sing. neut.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.
N. Trist-is,	triste,	N. Trist-es,	trist-ia,
G. Trist-is,		G. Trist-ium,	
D. Trist-i,		D. Trist-ibus,	
A. Trist-em,	triste,	A. Trist-es,	trist-ia,
V. Trist-is,	trist-e,	V. Trist-es,	trist-ia,
A. Trist-i,	<i>very rarely</i> triste.*	A. Trist-ibus.	

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.
N. Mēli-or,	mēli-us,	N. Mē-liōres,	meli-ōra,
G. Mēli-ōris,		G. Mēli-ōrum,	
D. Mēli-ōri,		D. Mēli-ōribus,	
A. Mēli-ōrem,	mēli-us,	A. Mēli-ōres,	mēli-ōra,
V. Mēli-or,	mēli-us,	V. Mēli-ōres,	mēli-ōra,
A. Mēli-ōre,	<i>or</i> mēli-ōri.	A. Mēli-ōribus.	

Adjectives of one termination, which, however, have two in acc. sing. and in nom. acc. and voc. pl. are also declined like substantives of the third declension, as *felix* happy; *ingens* vast.—And some have no neuter gender at all, except in particular cases, of which the most common are the dat. and abl. sing. and have never any distinctive neuter termination, as *mēmor* mindful, *sūperstēs* surviving.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.
N. Fēl-ix,		N. Fēli-ces,	fēli-cia,
G. Fēli-cis,		G. Fēli-cium,	
D. Fēli-ci,		D. Fēli-cibus,	
A. Fēli-cem,	fēl-ix,	A. Fēli-ces,	fēli-cia,
V. Fēl-ix,		V. Fēli-ces,	fēli-cia,
A. Fēli-ci.		A. Fēli-cibus.	

* There are in poetry a few instances of adjectives in *is* making the ablative in *e*, but they are very rare; and in adjectives of one termination, the ablative usually ends in *i*, except in words ending in *x*, increasing short, or in *ens* or *ans*, whose ablative most commonly ends in *e*, though *i* also is found, and except *pauper*, *senex*, *juvenis*, and *princeps*, and adjectives ending in *ēs*, as *sūperstēs*, which make the ablative in *e* only.

<i>Singular.</i>	
M.F.	N.
N. Ingens,	
G. Ingentis,	
D. Ingenti,	
A. Ingentem, ingens,	
V. Ingens,	
A. Ingenti, <i>or</i> ingente.	

<i>Singular.</i>	
N. Mēmōr,	
G. Mēmōris,	
D. Mēmōri,	
A. Mēmōrem,	
V. Mēmōr,	
A. Mēmōre, <i>or</i> mēmōri.	

<i>Plural.</i>	
M.F.	N.
N. Ingentes, ingentia,	
G. Ingentium,	
D. Ingentibus,	
A. Ingentes, ingentia,	
V. Ingentes, ingentia,	
A. Ingentibus.	

<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Mēmōres,	
G. Mēmōrum,	
D. Mēmōribus,	
A. Mēmōres,	
V. Mēmōrium,	
A. Mēmōribus.	

Ambo both, and *duo* two, are nouns adjective, and are thus declined, in the plural number only :

N. Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	<i>both.</i>
G. Amb-ōrum,	amb-ārum,	amb-ōrum,	<i>of both.</i>
D. Amb-ōbus,	amb-ābus,	amb-ōbus,	<i>to both.</i>
A. Amb-os,	amb-as,	amb-o,	<i>both.</i>
V. Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	<i>both.</i>
A. Amb-ōbus,	amb-ābus,	amb-ōbus,	<i>with both.</i>

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of signification, or comparison :

I. The positive ; which denotes the quality of a thing absolutely ; as, *doctus* learned, *brēvis* short.

II. The comparative ; which increases, or lessens the quality ; as *doctior* more learned, *brēvior* shorter, or more short :

And it is formed of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or*, in the masculine and feminine genders, and *us* in the neuter ; as, of

Doctus, gen. *docti*, is formed *doctior*, more learned :
of

Brēvis, dat. *brēvi*, is formed *brēvior*, shorter, or more short.

III. The superlative ; which increases, or diminishes the signification, or comparison, to the greatest degree ; as, *doctissimus* most learned, or very learned ; *brevissimus* shortest, most short, or very short :

And it is formed also of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimus* ; as, of Gen. *docti*, is formed *doctissimus*, most learned.

Dat. *brēvi*, is formed *brēvissimus*, shortest, or most short.

Note. Many Adjectives vary from these general rules, and form their comparisons irregularly : as,

<i>Bōnus</i> , good ;	<i>mēlior</i> , better ;	<i>optīmus</i> , best.
<i>Mālus</i> , bad ;	<i>pejor</i> , worse ;	<i>pessīmus</i> , worst.
<i>Magnus</i> , great ;	<i>mājor</i> , greater ;	<i>maxīmus</i> , greatest.
<i>Parvus</i> , little ;	<i>mīnor</i> , less ;	<i>mīnīmus</i> , least.
<i>Multus</i> , much ;	<i>plus</i> , more ;	<i>plūrīmus</i> , most.
<i>Dives</i> , rich ;	<i>divītior</i> , sync. <i>ditior</i> , more rich ;	<i>divītissīmus</i> , sync. <i>ditissīmus</i> , most rich.

Nēquam, wicked ; *nēquior*, more wicked ; *nēquissīmus*, most wicked.

Extērus, outward ; *extērior*, more outward ; *extrēmus*, and *extīmus*, uttermost, or most outward.

Infērus, low ; *infērior*, lower, or more low ; *infīmus*, and *īmus*, lowest, or most low.

Sūpērus, high ; *sūpērior*, higher, or more high ; *sūprēmus*, or *summus*, highest, or most high.

Postērus, subsequent ; *postērior*, later ; *postrēmus*, last.

Dexter, on the right hand ; *dextērior*, *dextīmus*, both in nearly the same sense as the positive.

Jūvēnis, young ; *jūnior*, younger, or more young.

Sēnex, old ; *sēnior*, older, or more old.

Some adjectives in the comparative and superlative degree are formed from prepositions ; as, from

<i>Intra</i> , within ;	<i>intērior</i> , inner ;	<i>intīmus</i> , inmost.
<i>Ultra</i> , beyond ;	<i>ultērior</i> , further ;	<i>ultīmus</i> , furthest, last.
<i>Citra</i> , on this side ;	<i>citērior</i> , nearer ;	<i>citīmus</i> , nearest.
<i>Prope</i> , near ;	<i>prōptior</i> , nearer ;	<i>proxīmus</i> , nearest.
<i>Præ</i> , before ;	<i>prior</i> , before ;	<i>prīmus</i> , first.

And some have no positive at all to which we can refer them ; as,

<i>detērior</i> , worse ;	<i>deterrimus</i> , worst.
<i>ōcyor</i> , swifter ;	<i>ōcyssimus</i> , swiftest.
<i>pōtior</i> , more desirable ;	<i>pōtissimus</i> , most desirable.

Adjectives ending in *er* form the superlative degree from the nominative case, by adding *rimus* ; as, of *pulcher* fair, *pulcher-rimus* fairest, or, most fair.

So too *vētus*, making in the gen. *vētēris*, though it has no comparative, makes in the superlative *vēterrims*.

The following adjectives in *lis*, change *is* into *-limus* :

<i>Agil-is</i> , nimble ;	<i>āgil-limus</i> , nimblest, or, most nimble.
<i>Fācil-is</i> , easy ;	<i>fācil-limus</i> , easiest, or, most easy.
<i>Grācil-is</i> , slender ;	<i>grācil-limus</i> , slenderest, or, most slender.
<i>Hūmil-is</i> , low ;	<i>hūmil-limus</i> , lowest, or, most low.
<i>Sīmil-is</i> , like ;	<i>sīmil-limus</i> , likest, or, most like.

Also, If a vowel comes before *us* in the nominative case of an adjective, the comparison is usually made by *māgis* more, and *maximè* most ; as,

Pius godly ; *māgis pius* more godly ; *maximè pius* most godly.*

OF A PRONOUN.

A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a substantive, and is either itself a substantive, and called a *personal pronoun* ; or an adjective, being either a *demonstrative*, or *relative*, or *interrogative* pronoun. There are also *possessive* pronouns, which are adjectives derived from the genitive cases of the personal pronouns.

* But Juvenal uses *egregiūs* as the comparative form of the adverb *egregiè*, and *piissimus* occurs in Seneca ; but these examples are not to be imitated.

The pronouns are :

<i>Egö</i> , I,	} the personal pronouns :	<i>meus</i> , mine,	} possessive pronouns.
<i>tu</i> , you,		<i>tuus</i> , yours,	
<i>sui</i> , of himself,		<i>suus</i> , his own,	
		<i>noster</i> , ours,	
		<i>vester</i> , yours, of ye,	
<i>hic</i> , this,	} demonstrative pronouns :	<i>qui</i> , who, the relative pronoun, and its compounds	
<i>is</i> , he,		<i>quicunque</i> , <i>quisquis</i> , etc.	
<i>ille</i> , he,		<i>qui</i> or <i>quis</i> , who? the interrogative pronoun.	
<i>ipse</i> , oneself,			
<i>idem</i> , { (which is a compound of <i>is</i>) the same,			

The syllable *met*, giving additional emphasis to the pronoun, is often added to *egö*, in all cases except the genitive, and to some of the cases of *tu* and of *sui* ; but to the nominative of *tu*, *met* is not added, but *te*, as nom. *tütē*, acc. *tütēmet*. The accusative and ablative cases of *sui* admit of a reduplication, as *sēsē*.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Ego, *tu*, *sui*, are pronouns substantive, and are thus declined :

Singular.		Plural.	
N. Ego, I,		N. Nos, we,	
G. Mei, of me,		G. Nostr-um, vel -i, of us,	
D. Mihi,* to me,		D. Nōbis, to us,	
A. Me, me,		A. Nos, us,	
V. —		V. —	
A. Me, from, or, by me.		A. Nōbis, from, or, by us.	
Singular.		Plural.	
N. Tu, thou, or, you,		N. Vos, ye, or, you, [you,	
G. Tui, of thee, or, you,		G. Vestr-um, vel -i, of ye, or,	
D. Tibi, to thee, or, you,		D. Vōbis, to ye, or, you,	
A. Te, thee, or, you,		A. Vos, ye, or, you,	
V. Tu, o thou, or, you,		V. Vos, o ye,	
A. Te, with thee, or, you.		A. Vōbis, with ye, or, you,	

* In poetry often contracted into *mī*.

Sui,* of himself, herself, themselves, itself, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined :

Singular and Plural.

G. <i>Sui</i> ,	<i>of himself,</i>	} <i>herself, themselves, &c.</i>
D. <i>Sibi</i> ,	<i>to himself,</i>	
A. <i>Se</i> ,	<i>himself,</i>	
A. <i>Se</i> ,	<i>by himself,</i>	

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Hic</i> ,†	<i>hæc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> ,	N. <i>Hi</i> ,	<i>hæ</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,
G. <i>Hujus</i> ,			G. <i>Hōrum</i> ,	<i>hārum</i> ,	<i>hōrum</i> ,
D. <i>Huic</i> ,			D. <i>His</i> ,		
A. <i>Hunc</i> ,	<i>hanc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> ,	A. <i>Hos</i> ,	<i>has</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,
V. —			V. —		
A. <i>Hōc</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,	<i>hōc</i> .	A. <i>His</i> .		

Ille he, fem. *illa* she, neut. *illud* that, is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Ille</i> ,	<i>ill-a</i> ,	<i>ill-ud</i> ,	N. <i>Ill-i</i> ,	<i>ill-æ</i> ,	<i>ill-a</i> ,
G. <i>Ill-ŷ us</i> ,			G. <i>Ill-ōrum</i> ,	<i>ill-ārum</i> ,	<i>ill-ōrum</i> ,
D. <i>Ill-i</i> ,			D. <i>Ill-is</i> ,		
A. <i>Ill-um</i> ,	<i>ill-am</i> ,	<i>ill-ud</i> ,	A. <i>Ill-os</i> ,	<i>ill-as</i> ,	<i>ill-a</i> ,
V. —			V. —		
A. <i>Ill-o</i> ,	<i>ill-â</i> ,	<i>ill-o</i> .	A. <i>Ill-is</i> .		

In like manner is also declined *iste* that, and *ipse* he himself ; except that this last makes *ipsum* in the nominative and accusative cases singular of the neuter gender.

Is, *ea*, *id*, he, she, or that, is thus declined :

* *Sui* and its possessive *suus* are called *reflective* pronouns, because they refer to that person or thing which is the principal word in the sentence.

† To *hic* is often added *ce*, giving additional emphasis in all cases and genders ; and in interrogative sentences sometimes *cine* is added ; as, *hujusce*, *huncce*, *hoscce*, etc.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Is,	ea,	id,	N. Ii,	eæ,	ea,
G. Ejus,			G. Eórum,	eárum,	eórum,
D. Ei,			D. Iis, <i>vel</i> ,	eis,	
A. Eum,	eam,	id,	A. Eos,	eas,	ea,
V. —			V. —		
A. Eo,	eâ,	eo.	A. Iis, <i>vel</i> ,	eis.	

In like manner also is declined its compound, *idem* the same; as, nom. *īdem*, *eādem*, *īdem*; gen. *ejusdem*, &c.

The relative *qui* who, is thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. Qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. Cujus,			G. Quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. Cui,			D. Quibus,*		
A. Quem,	quam,	quod,	A. Quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. —			V. —		
A. Quo,	quâ, quo.		A. Quibus.		

In like manner also are declined its compounds, *quidam*, a certain one; *quivis*, *quīlibet*, any one; *quicunque*, whosoever, &c. &c.

The *indefinite* pronoun *quis*, any one, (not found except after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne*, *quo*, *quanto*, or *quum*), is declined like *qui*, except that in the nom. sing. fem. and also in the nom. and acc. pl. neut. it makes both *quæ* and (more usually) *quă*; and in the nom. and acc. neut. sing. it makes *quid*.

The *interrogative* pronoun when joined with a substantive is *qui*?† when standing without a substantive the nom. sing. masc. is *quis*? and in the nom. and acc. sing. neut. *quid*?

* *Quibus* is often contracted into *queis*, or *quīs*, in poetry, and in some (but not in the purest) prose writers.

† There are a few instances of *quis* also being used with a substantive, but, except in poetry, it is seldom done, except to avoid an open vowel.

Quisquis, whosoever, is confined to the following cases :

Nom. *Quisquis*, ——— quidquid, *or* quicquid,
 Acc. ——— ——— quidquid, *or* quicquid,
 Abl. M. Quoquo, N. quoquo.

Meus, *tuus*, *suus*, are declined like *bonus*, except that *meus* makes *mi*, in the vocative case singular masculine; and *tuus*, *suus*, with many other pronouns, have no vocative case.

OF A VERB.

A VERB is that part of speech by which it is declared that the subject of a sentence *does or suffers* something.

Verbs have two voices; the *active*, ending in *o*; the *passive* ending in *or*.

Of verbs ending in *o* some are *transitive*, that is to say, in them the action passes on to a noun following; as, *amo te*, "I love you." And these verbs have a passive voice, which is made by changing *o* into *or*; as, *amor*, "I am loved."

Some are *intransitive*, that is to say, the action expressed by them does not pass on to any noun following, but is complete in itself; as, *curro*, "I run;" and these verbs have no passive voice.*

Three verbs, *fīo*, "I become;" *vāpūlo*, "I am beaten;" *vēneo*, "I am sold," have a passive signification, but an active form (except that *fīo* makes *factus sum* in the perfect;) and are called *neutral passives*.

Four verbs, *audeo*, "I dare;" *fīdo*, "I trust;" *gaudeo*, "I am glad;" and *sōleo*, "I am accustomed," have the passive form with an active signification in the participle of the perfect tense, and in the tenses formed from it; as, *ausus sum*, &c. and these are called *neuter passives*.

* But, from these verbs impersonal, verbs are often formed of the third singular passive; as, *vīvitur*, "it is lived by men," that is to say, "men live, one lives," &c.; *ītur*, "men go, one goes," &c.; *ventum est*, "I, or you, or he came," &c.

Of verbs ending in *or* some are *passive*, as has been said above, and some are *deponent* verbs, being of a passive form (with the addition of gerunds and supines,) but of an active signification; some being *transitive*, as, *věněror Deum*, "I worship God," and some *intransitive*, as, *mōrior*, "I die."

Some verbs are used only in the third person singular, having no nominative case, as, *tōnat*, "it thunders;" *ōportet me*, "it behoves me," and these are called verbs *impersonal*.

OF MOODS.

There are four moods, the indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and the infinitive.

The *indicative* mood either declares a thing positively, as, *ego amo*, I do love; or asks a question, as, *amas tu*, dost thou love?

The *imperative* mood expresses a command, a request, a wish, or an exhortation, as, *věni huc*, "come hither;" *parce mihi*, "spare me." It is also known by the sign *let*, as, *īto*, "let him go."*

The *subjunctive* or *potential* mood speaks of the subject as it is conceived in the mind; and is called *subjunctive*, when it is subjoined to another word or clause going before it, as, *nescio qualis sit*, "I know not what sort of man he is." It is called *potential*, when it signifies *power*, *duty*, *likelihood*, *inclination*, or *wish*; and in the second and third persons of the present and perfect it is sometimes used nearly in the sense of the imperative; as, *sis bōnus*, "may you be propitious;" *āmet*, "let him love."

The *infinitive* mood has neither number, person, or nominative case before it; and is known commonly by the sign *to*, as, *amāre*, "to love." It is also often used as a

* In grammars the imperative is usually given as consisting but of one tense; but the forms in *to* (active) and in *tor* (passive) have a more future sense than the other forms.

nominative or accusative case neuter; as, *errare humanum est*, "to err is human."

OF TENSES.

Verbs have six tenses or times, expressing the time of an action; the present, the imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect and the first future, and second future, or future perfect.

The *present* tense speaks of a thing now existing, or now doing; as, *āmo*, "I love;" *lōquor*, "I am speaking;" *sum*, "I am."

The *imperfect* tense speaks of a thing that was being done, but was not terminated, at some particular past time; as, *āmābam*, "I was loving." And sometimes it expresses a habit; as, *dīcēbam*, "I used to say." And is formed by changing—

In the first conjugation	<i>o</i> into <i>-ābam</i> ,
In the second	<i>o</i> into <i>-bam</i> ,
In the third and fourth	<i>o</i> into <i>-ēbam</i> .

The *perfect* tense speaks of an action terminated; as, *āmāvi*, "I loved," or "have loved," and is formed as will be shewn in the *As in præsenti*.

The *pluperfect* speaks of a thing done at some time past, and then ended; as, *āmāvēram*, "I had loved," and is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *eram*.

The *first future* tense speaks of a thing to be done hereafter; as, *āmābo*, "I shall love;" and is formed from the present by changing—

In the first conjugation	<i>o</i> into <i>ābo</i> ,
In the second	<i>o</i> into <i>bo</i> ,
In the third and fourth	<i>o</i> into <i>am</i> .

The *second future*, or *future perfect*, speaks of a thing which will have been done when something else has been done; as, *āmāvēro*, "I shall have loved;" and is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ero*.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have three *gerunds*, ending in *dī, dō, dum*, which supply the oblique cases of the infinitive present active; as, *āmandī*, “of loving;” *āmandum*, “loving;” *āmando*, “by loving,” &c.; and they are formed from the present by changing—

In the first conjugation	<i>o</i> into <i>andī</i> , &c.
In the second	<i>eo</i> into <i>endi</i> ,
In the third and fourth	<i>o</i> into <i>endi</i> .

They have two *supines*, which are also used to supply cases for the infinitive (and are formed, as will be taught in the *As in præsenti*.)

The supine in *um* is used only with verbs expressing or implying a motion to a place; as, *eo dormitum*, “I go to sleep.”

The supine in *u* has a passive sense, and is used only after adjectives, or after one or two substantives used as adjectives; as, *turpe factu*, “base to be done;” *nēfas dictu*, “wicked to be said.” But there are many verbs which have no supine.

PARTICIPLES.

THERE are four participles; two active, and two passive:—

The participle of the present active, which signifies a present action, and ends in *ans* in the first conjugation, and in *ens* in the others; as, *āmans*, “loving;” *mōnens*, “warning.”

The participle future active ending in *ūrus*, which signifies a likelihood or design of doing anything; as, *āmātūrus*, “about to love,” or “likely to love.”

The participle perfect passive, which signifies what is actually done and completed; as, *āmātus*, “loved;” *mōnitus*, “having been warned.” But in deponent verbs this participle has commonly an active signification; as, *lōcūtus hæc*, “having spoken these things.”

Another participle passive, called also the *gerundive*, which denotes that what is spoken of must happen, ought to happen, or (sometimes) is actually happening, with respect to a person or thing; as, *amandus*, "who must, or ought to be, loved;" in *epistolā scribendā*, "in writing the letter."

OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two numbers, singular and plural, like nouns, and three persons in each number.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Ego amo,	<i>I love.</i>	Nos amāmus,	<i>We love.</i>
2. Tu amas,	<i>you love.</i>	Vos amātis,	<i>ye love.</i>
3. Ille amat,	<i>he loves.</i>	Illi amant,	<i>they love.</i>

All nouns, except *ego* and *tu*, are of the third person.

Of the Verb *Esse*, to be.

Before other verbs are declined, it is necessary to learn the verb esse, to be.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futūrus, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Sum,	<i>I am.</i>	Plur. Sūmus,	<i>We are.</i>
Es,	<i>you are.</i>	Estis,	<i>ye are.</i>
Est,	<i>he is.</i>	Sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing. Ēram,	<i>I was.</i>	Plur. Ērāmus,	<i>We were.</i>
Ēras,	<i>you were.</i>	Ērātis,	<i>ye were.</i>
Ērat,	<i>he was.</i>	Ērant,	<i>they were.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Fui,	<i>I have been.</i>
Fuisti,	<i>you have been.</i>
Fuit,	<i>he has been.</i>
Plur. Fuimus,	<i>We have been.</i>
Fuistis,	<i>ye have been.</i>
Fuerunt, <i>vel fuere,</i>	<i>they have been.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Fuëram,	<i>I had been.</i>
Fuëras,	<i>you had been.</i>
Fuërat,	<i>he had been.</i>
Plur. Fuërāmus,	<i>We had been.</i>
Fuërātis,	<i>ye had been.</i>
Fuërant,	<i>they had been.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

Sing. Ēro,	<i>I shall be.</i>
Ēris,	<i>you will be.</i>
Ērit,	<i>he will be.</i>
Plur. Ērimus,	<i>We shall be.</i>
Ēritis,	<i>ye will be.</i>
Ērunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have.*

Sing. Fuëro,	<i>I shall have been.</i>
Fuëris,	<i>you will have been.</i>
Fuërit,	<i>he will have been.</i>
Plur. Fuërīmus,	<i>We shall have been.</i>
Fuërītis,	<i>ye will have been.</i>
Fuërint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Es, esto,	<i>Be thou.</i>
Esto,	<i>be he, or, let him be.</i>
Plur. Este, estōte,	<i>Be ye.</i>
Sunto,	<i>be they, or, let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

Sing. Sim,	<i>I may be.</i>	Plur. Simus,	<i>We may be.</i>
Sis,	<i>you may be.</i>	Sītis,	<i>ye may be.</i>
Sit,	<i>he may be.</i>	Sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, &c.*

Sing. Essem, <i>vel, fōrem,</i>	<i>I might be.</i>
Esses, <i>vel, fōres,</i>	<i>you might be.</i>
Esset, <i>vel, fōret,</i>	<i>he might be.</i>
Plur. Essēmus, <i>vel, fōrēmus,</i>	<i>We might be.</i>
Essētis, <i>vel, fōrētis,</i>	<i>ye might be.</i>
Essent, <i>vel, fōrent,</i>	<i>they might be.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have, &c.*

Sing. Fuërim,	<i>I may have been.</i>
Fuëris,	<i>you may have been.</i>
Fuërit,	<i>he may have been.</i>
Plur. Fuërimus,	<i>We may have been.</i>
Fuëritis,	<i>ye may have been.</i>
Fuërint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, would have, &c.*

Sing. Fuissem,	<i>I might, or, would have been.</i>
Fuisses,	<i>you might, or, would have been.</i>
Fuisset,	<i>he might, or, would have been.</i>
Plur. Fuissēmus,	<i>We might, or, would have been.</i>
Fuissētis,	<i>ye might, or, would have been.</i>
Fuissent,	<i>they might, or, would have been.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*may be about.*

Sing. Fütūrus sim,*	<i>I may be about to be.</i>
Fütūrus sis,	<i>you may be about to be.</i>
Fütūrus sit,	<i>he may be about to be.</i>
Plur. Fütūri simus,	<i>We may be about to be.</i>
Fütūri sītis,	<i>ye may be about to be.</i>
Fütūri sint,	<i>they may be about to be.</i>

* *Fütūrus* being in reality a participle, agrees with its substantive in gender and number; so that in the singular it may be either *futurus*, *futura*, or *futurum*; in the plural, *futuri*, *-æ*, or *-a*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense,

Esse, *to be.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense,

Fuisse, *to have been.*

Future Tense,

Före, *vel*, Fütūrum esse, *to be about to be.*

Participle future,*

Fütūrus, *about to be.*

DECLENSION OF VERBS REGULAR.

VERBS have four conjugations, both in the active and passive voice.

The first conjugation has *ā* in the penultima (or last syllable but one) of the infinitive mood active; as, *āmō, amāre.*†

The second has *ē*; as, *mōneo, mōnēre.*

The third has *ě*; as, *rēgo, rēgěre.*

The fourth has *ī*; as, *audīo, audīre.*

VERBS ACTIVE in *O* are declined after these examples.

1. *Ām-o, am-as, m-āvi, am-āre; aman-di, aman-do, aman-dum; amāt-um, amāt-u; am-ans, amātu-rus: to love.*

2. *Mōn-eo, mon-es, mon-ui, mon-ēre; monen-di, monen-do, monen-dum; monīt-um, monīt-u; mon-ens, monītū-rus: to advise.*

3. *Rěg-o, reg-is, rex-i, reg-ěre; regen-di, regen-do, regen-dum; rect-um, rect-u; reg-ens, rectu-rus: to rule.*

* Some compounds of *sum* have also a present participle; as, *absum*, to be absent, part. *absens*, absent, or being absent.

† Except *do*, "to give;" which makes *dāre, dātum*.

4. Aud-io, aud-is, aud-īvi, aud-īre; audien-di, audien-do, audien-dum; audīt-um, audīt-u; audi-ens, auditu-rus: *to hear.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—*Amo.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Ām-o,	<i>I love, am loving, or, do love.</i>
ām-as,	<i>you love, are loving, or, do love.</i>
ām-at,	<i>he loves, is loving, or, does love.</i>
Plur. Ām-āmus,	<i>We love, are loving, or, do love.</i>
ām-ātis,	<i>ye love, are loving, or, do love.</i>
ām-ant,	<i>they love, are loving, or, do love.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing. Ām-ābam,	<i>I did love, or, was loving.</i>
am-ābas,	<i>you did love, or, were loving.</i>
am-ābat,	<i>he did love, or, was loving.</i>
Plur. Am-ābāmus,	<i>We did love, or, were loving.</i>
am-ābātis,	<i>ye did love, or, were loving.</i>
am-ābant,	<i>they did love, or, were loving.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Āmāv-i,	<i>I loved, or, have loved.</i>
amāv-isti,	<i>you loved, or, have loved.</i>
amāv-it,	<i>he loved, or, has loved.</i>
Plur. Amāv-īmus,	<i>We loved, or, have loved.</i>
amāv-istis,	<i>ye loved, or, have loved.</i>
amāv-ērunt, <i>vel</i> -ēre,	<i>they loved, or, have loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Āmāv-eram,	<i>I had loved.</i>
amāv-ēras,	<i>you had loved.</i>
amāv-erat,	<i>he had loved.</i>
Plur. Amāv-ērāmus,	<i>We had loved.</i>
amāv-ērātis,	<i>ye had loved.</i>
amāv-erant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

Sing. Ām-ābo,	<i>I will love.</i>
am-ābis,	<i>you will love.</i>
am-ābit,	<i>he will love.</i>
Plur. Am-ābīmus,	<i>We will love.</i>
am-ābītis,	<i>ye will love.</i>
am-ābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have, will have.*

Sing. Āmāv-ēro,	<i>I shall have loved.</i>
amāv-ēris,	<i>you will have loved.</i>
amāv-ērit,	<i>he will have loved.</i>
Plur. Amāv-ērīmus,	<i>We shall have loved.</i>
amāv-ērītis,	<i>ye will have loved.</i>
amāv-ērint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Ām-a, ām-āto,	<i>Love thou.</i>
ām-āto,	<i>let him love.</i>
Plur. Am-āte, am-ātōte,	<i>Love ye.</i>
am-ānto,	<i>let them love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

Sing. Ām-em,	<i>I may love.</i>
am-es,	<i>you may love.</i>
am-et,	<i>he may love.</i>
Plur. Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love.</i>
am-ētis,	<i>ye may love.</i>
am-ent,	<i>they may love.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should, would.*

Sing. Ām-ārem,	<i>I might love.</i>
am-āres,	<i>you might love.</i>
am-āret,	<i>he might love.</i>
Plur. Am-ārēmus,	<i>We might love.</i>
am-ārētis,	<i>ye might love.</i>
am-arent,	<i>they might love.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

Sing. Āmāv-ĕrim,	<i>I may have loved.</i>
amāv-ĕris,	<i>you may have loved.</i>
amāv-ĕrit,	<i>he may have loved.</i>
Plur. Amāv-ĕrimus,	<i>We may have loved.</i>
amāv-ĕrītis,	<i>ye may have loved.</i>
amāv-ĕrint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, should have.*

Sing. Āmāv-issem,	<i>I would have loved.</i>
amāv-isses,	<i>you would have loved.</i>
amāv-isset,	<i>he would have loved.</i>
Plur. Amāv-issēmus,	<i>We would have loved.</i>
amāv-issētis,	<i>ye would have loved.</i>
amāv-issent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

Sing. Āmātūrus sim,	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
amaturus sis,	<i>you may be about to love.</i>
amaturus sit,	<i>he may be about to love.</i>
Plur. Amaturi simus,	<i>We may be about to love.</i>
amaturi sitis,	<i>ye may be about to love.</i>
amaturi sint,	<i>they may be about to love.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Āmā-re, *to love.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Āmāv-isse, *to have loved.*

Future Tense.

Āmātū-rum esse, *or, fōre,* *to be about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Āman-di,	<i>of loving.</i>
Aman-do,	<i>in loving.</i>
Aman-dum,	<i>loving.</i>

SUPINES.

Active,	Passive,
Āmāt-um, <i>to love.</i>	Āmāt-u, <i>to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense,	Future,
Ām-ans, <i>loving.</i>	Āmātū-rus, <i>about to love.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.—*Moneo.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Mōn-eo,	<i>I advise, am advising, or, do advise.</i>
mōn-es,	<i>you advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>
mōn-et,	<i>he advises, is advising, or, does advise.</i>
Plur. Mōn-ēmus,	<i>We advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>
mōn-ētis,	<i>ye advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>
mōn-ent,	<i>they advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing. Mōn-ēbam,	<i>I did advise, or, was advising.</i>
mōn-ēbas,	<i>you did advise, or, were advising.</i>
mōn-ēbat,	<i>he did advise, or, was advising.</i>
Plur. Mōn-ēbāmus,	<i>We did advise, or, were advising.</i>
mōn-ēbātis,	<i>ye did advise, or, were advising.</i>
mōn-ēbant,	<i>they did advise, or, were advising.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Mōnu-i,	<i>I advised, or, have advised.</i>
mōnu-isti,	<i>you advise, or, have advised.</i>
mōnu-it,	<i>he advised, or, has advised.</i>
Plur. Mōnu-īmus,	<i>We advised, or, have advised.</i>
mōnu-istis,	<i>ye advised, or, have advised.</i>
mōnu-ērunt, v. -ēre,	<i>they advised, or, have advised.</i>

• 4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Mõnu-ëram,	<i>I had advised.</i>
mõnu-ëras,	<i>you had advised.</i>
mõnu-ërat,	<i>he had advised.</i>
Plur. Mõnu-ëramus,	<i>We had advised.</i>
mõnu-ëratīs,	<i>ye had advised.</i>
mõnu-ërant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

Sing. Mõnē-bo,	<i>I shall advise.</i>
mõnē-bis,	<i>you will advise.</i>
mõnē-bit,	<i>he will advise.</i>
Plur. Mõnē-bīmus,	<i>We shall, or, will advise.</i>
mõnē-bītīs,	<i>ye will advise.</i>
mõnē-bunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have, will have.*

Sing. Monu-ëro,	<i>I shall have advised.</i>
monu-ëris,	<i>you will have advised.</i>
monu-ërit,	<i>he will have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-ërimus,	<i>We shall have advised.</i>
monu-ëritīs,	<i>ye will have advised.</i>
monu-ërint,	<i>they will have advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Mõn-e, mon-ëto,	<i>Advise thou.</i>
mon-ëto,	<i>let him advise.</i>
Plur. Mon-ëte, mon-ëtōte,	<i>Advise ye.</i>
mon-ënto,	<i>let them advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

Sing. Mone-am,	<i>I may advise.</i>
mone-as,	<i>you may advise.</i>
mone-at,	<i>he may advise.</i>
Plur. Mone-āmus,	<i>We may advise.</i>
mone-ātīs,	<i>ye may advise.</i>
mone-ant,	<i>they may advise.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, would.*

Sing. Monē-rem,	<i>I might advise.</i>
monē-res,	<i>you might advise.</i>
monē-ret,	<i>he might advise.</i>
Plur. Monē-rēmus,	<i>We might advise.</i>
monē-rētis,	<i>ye might advise.</i>
monē-rent,	<i>they might advise.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

Sing. Monu-ērim,	<i>I may have advised.</i>
monu-ēris,	<i>you may have advised.</i>
monu-ērit,	<i>he may have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-ērīmus,	<i>We may have advised.</i>
monu-ērītis,	<i>ye may have advised.</i>
monu-ērīnt,	<i>they may have advised.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing. Monu-issem,	<i>I would have advised.</i>
monu-isses,	<i>you would have advised.</i>
monu-isset,	<i>he would have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-issēmus,	<i>We would have advised.</i>
monu-issētis,	<i>ye would have advised.</i>
monu-issent,	<i>they would have advised.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

Sing. Mōnītūrus sim,	<i>I may be about to advise.</i>
monitūrus sis,	<i>you may be about to advise.</i>
monitum sit,	<i>he may be about to advise.</i>
Plur. Mōnītūri simus,	<i>We may be about to advise.</i>
monituri sitis,	<i>ye may be about to advise.</i>
monituri sint,	<i>they may be about to advise.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Imperfect Tense.

Mon-ēre, *to advise.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Monu-isse, *to have advised.*

Future Tense.

Monitū-rum esse, or fore, *to be about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Monēn-di, *of advising.*
 monēn-do, *in advising.*
 monēn-dum, *to advise.*

SUPINES.

Active. Passive.
 Monit-um, *to advise.* Monit-u, *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense. Future.
 Mon-ens, *advising.* Monitū-rus, *about to advise.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rĕgo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—do, am.

Sing. Rĕg-o,	<i>I rule, am ruling, or, do rule.</i>
rĕg-is,	<i>you rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i>
rĕg-it,	<i>he rules, is ruling, or, does rule.</i>
Plur. Rĕg-ĭmus,	<i>We rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i>
rĕg-ĭtis,	<i>ye rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i>
rĕg-unt,	<i>they rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—did, was.

Sing. Rĕgē-bam,	<i>I did rule, or, was ruling.</i>
rĕgē-bas,	<i>you did rule, or were ruling.</i>
rĕgē-bat,	<i>he did rule, or, was ruling.</i>
Plur. Rĕgē-bāmus,	<i>We did rule, or, were ruling.</i>
rĕgē-bātis,	<i>ye did rule, or, were ruling.</i>
rĕgē-bant,	<i>they did rule, or, were ruling.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—have.

Sing. Rex-i,	<i>I ruled, or, have ruled.</i>
rex-isti,	<i>you ruled, or, have ruled.</i>
rex-it,	<i>he ruled, or, has ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-ĭmus,	<i>We ruled, or, have ruled.</i>
rex-istis,	<i>ye ruled, or, have ruled.</i>
rex-erunt, v. ere,	<i>they ruled, or, have ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Rex- <i>eram</i> ,	<i>I had ruled.</i>
rex- <i>eras</i> ,	<i>you had ruled.</i>
rex- <i>erat</i> ,	<i>he had ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex- <i>erāmus</i> ,	<i>We had ruled.</i>
rex- <i>erātis</i> ,	<i>ye had ruled.</i>
rex- <i>erant</i> ,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

Sing. Rēg- <i>am</i> ,	<i>I shall rule.</i>
rēg- <i>es</i> ,	<i>you will rule.</i>
rēg- <i>et</i> ,	<i>he will rule.</i>
Plur. Rēg- <i>ēmus</i> ,	<i>We shall rule.</i>
rēg- <i>ētis</i> ,	<i>ye shall rule.</i>
rēg- <i>ent</i> ,	<i>they will rule.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have, will have.*

Sing. Rex- <i>ēro</i> ,	<i>I shall have ruled.</i>
rex- <i>ēris</i> ,	<i>you will have ruled.</i>
rex- <i>ērit</i> ,	<i>he will have ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex- <i>ērīmus</i> ,	<i>We shall have ruled.</i>
rex- <i>ērītis</i> ,	<i>ye will have ruled.</i>
rex- <i>ērint</i> ,	<i>they will have ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—*No first Person.*

Sing. Rēg- <i>e</i> , reg- <i>ito</i> ,	<i>Rule thou.</i>
rēg- <i>ito</i> ,	<i>let him rule.</i>
Plur. Rēg- <i>ite</i> , reg- <i>itote</i> ,	<i>Rule ye.</i>
rēg- <i>unto</i> ,	<i>let them rule.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

Sing. Rēg- <i>am</i> ,	<i>I may rule.</i>
rēg- <i>as</i> ,	<i>you may rule.</i>
rēg- <i>at</i> ,	<i>he may rule.</i>
Plur. Rēg- <i>āmus</i> ,	<i>We may rule.</i>
rēg- <i>ātis</i> ,	<i>ye may rule.</i>
rēg- <i>ant</i> ,	<i>they may rule.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might*.

Sing. Rēg-ērem,	<i>I might rule.</i>
rēg-ēres,	<i>you might rule.</i>
rēg-ēret,	<i>he might rule.</i>
Plur. Rēg-ērēmus,	<i>We might rule.</i>
rēg-ērētis,	<i>ye might rule.</i>
rēg-ērēt,	<i>they might rule.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have, &c.*

Sing. Rex-ērim,	<i>I may have ruled.</i>
rex-ēris,	<i>you may have ruled.</i>
rex-ērit,	<i>he may have ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-ērīmus,	<i>We may have ruled.</i>
rex-ērītis,	<i>ye may have ruled.</i>
rex-ērīnt,	<i>they may have ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing. Rex-issem,	<i>I would have ruled.</i>
rex-isses,	<i>you would have ruled.</i>
rex-isset,	<i>he would have ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-issēmus,	<i>We would have ruled.</i>
rex-issētis,	<i>ye would have ruled.</i>
rex-issent,	<i>they would have ruled.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

Sing. Rectūrus sim,	<i>I may be about to rule.</i>
rectūrus sis,	<i>you may be about to rule.</i>
rectūrus sit,	<i>he may be about to rule.</i>
Plur. Rectūri simus,	<i>We may be about to rule.</i>
rectūri sītis,	<i>ye may be about to rule.</i>
rectūri sint,	<i>they may be about to rule.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Reg-ēre,	<i>to rule.</i>
----------	-----------------

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Rex-isse,	<i>to have ruled.</i>
-----------	-----------------------

Future Tense.

Rectū-rum esse, or fōre, *to be about to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Regen-di, *of ruling.*
 regen-do, *in ruling.*
 regen-dum, *to rule.*

SUPINES.

Active. *Passive.*
 Rect-um, *to rule.* Rect-u, *to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense. *Future.*
 Reg-ens, *ruling.* Rectū-rus, *about to rule.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audio.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—do, am.

Sing. Aud-io,	<i>I hear, am hearing, or, do hear.</i>
aud-is,	<i>you hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>
aud-it,	<i>he hears, is hearing, or, does hear.</i>
Plur. Aud-īmus,	<i>We hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>
aud-ītis,	<i>ye hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>
aud-iunt,	<i>they hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—did, was.

Sing. Audiē-bam,	<i>I did hear, or, was hearing.</i>
audiē-bas,	<i>you did hear, or, were hearing.</i>
audiē-bat,	<i>he did hear, or, was hearing.</i>
Plur. Audiē-bāmus,	<i>We did hear, or, were hearing.</i>
audiē-bātis,	<i>ye did hear, or, were hearing.</i>
audiē-bant,	<i>they did hear, or, were hearing.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—have.

Sing. Audīv-i,	<i>I heard, or, have heard.</i>
audīv-isti,	<i>you heard, or, have heard.</i>
audīv-it,	<i>he heard, or, has heard.</i>
Plur. Audīv-īmus,	<i>We heard, or, have heard.</i>
audīv-istis,	<i>ye heard, or, have heard.</i>
audīv-ērunt, v. -eré,	<i>they heard, or, have heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Audīv-eram,	<i>I had heard.</i>
audīv-eras,	<i>you had heard.</i>
audīv-erat,	<i>he had heard.</i>
Plur. Audīv-erāmus,	<i>We had heard.</i>
audīv-erātis,	<i>ye had heard.</i>
audīv-erant,	<i>they had heard.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

Sing. Aud-iam,	<i>I shall hear.</i>
audi-es,	<i>you will hear.</i>
audi-et,	<i>he will hear.</i>
Plur. Audi-ēmus,	<i>We shall hear.</i>
audi-ētis,	<i>ye will hear.</i>
audi-ent,	<i>they will hear.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have, will have.*

Sing. Audīv-ēro,	<i>I shall have heard.</i>
Audīv-ēris,	<i>you will have heard.</i>
Audīv-ērit,	<i>he will have heard.</i>
Plur. Audīv-ērimus,	<i>We shall have heard.</i>
Audīv-ēritis,	<i>ye will have heard.</i>
Audīv-ērint,	<i>they will have heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Aud-i, aud-īto,	<i>Hear thou.</i>
aud-īto,	<i>let him hear.</i>
Plur. Aud-īte, aud-ītōte,	<i>Hear ye.</i>
aud-iunto,	<i>let them hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

Sing. Audi-am,	<i>I may hear.</i>
audi-as,	<i>you may hear.</i>
audi-at,	<i>he may hear.</i>
Plur. Audi-āmus,	<i>We may hear.</i>
audi-ātis,	<i>ye may hear.</i>
audi-ant,	<i>they may hear.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might*.

Sing. Audi-rem,	<i>I might hear.</i>
audi-res,	<i>you might hear.</i>
audi-ret,	<i>he might hear.</i>
Plur. Audi-rēmus,	<i>We might hear.</i>
audi-rētis,	<i>ye might hear.</i>
audi-rent,	<i>they might hear.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have, &c.*

Sing. Audiv-ērim,	<i>I may have heard.</i>
audiv-ēris,	<i>you may have heard.</i>
audiv-ērit,	<i>he may have heard.</i>
Plur. Audiv-ērīmus,	<i>We may have heard.</i>
audiv-ērītis,	<i>ye may have heard.</i>
audiv-ērīnt,	<i>they may have heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing. Audiv-issem,	<i>I would have heard.</i>
audiv-isses,	<i>you would have heard.</i>
audiv-isset,	<i>he would have heard.</i>
Plur. Audiv-issēmus,	<i>We would have heard.</i>
audiv-issētis,	<i>ye would have heard.</i>
audiv-issent,	<i>they would have heard.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to be.*

Sing. Auditūrus sim,	<i>I may be about to hear.</i>
auditūrus sis,	<i>you may be about to hear.</i>
auditūrus sit,	<i>he may be about to hear.</i>
Plur. Auditūri simus,	<i>We may be about to hear.</i>
auditūri sītis,	<i>ye may be about to hear.</i>
audi ūri sint,	<i>they may be about to hear.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Aud-ire, *to hear.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Audiv-isse, *to have heard.*

Future Tense.

Auditū-rum esse, or, fōre, *to be about to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Audien-di,	<i>of hearing.</i>
audien-do,	<i>in hearing.</i>
audien-dum,	<i>to hear.</i>

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Audit-um, <i>to hear.</i>	Audit-u, <i>to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future.
Audi-ens, <i>hearing.</i>	Auditū-rus, <i>about to hear.</i>

IMPERSONAL VERBS are conjugated thus :

Present.

Sing. Dēcet me,	<i>It becomes me, or, I ought.</i>
dēcet te,	<i>it becomes you, or, you ought.</i>
dēcet illum,	<i>it becomes him, or, he ought.</i>
Plur. Dēcet nos,	<i>It becomes us, or, we ought.</i>
dēcet vos,	<i>it becomes you, or, ye ought.</i>
dēcet illos,	<i>It becomes them, or, they ought.</i>

Imperfect.

Dēcēbat me.
dēcēbat te, &c.

Like the third sing. of *moneo* ; and so on through all the tenses.

DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

VERBS PASSIVE in *OR*, are thus declined :

1. *Ām-or, ām-āris vel am-āre, amāt-us sum vel* fui ;*
am-āri ; amāt-us, aman-dus ; to be loved.
2. *Mōn-eor, mon-ēris vel mon-ēre, mōnīt-us sum vel*
fui ; mon-ēri ; monit-us, monén-dus ; to be advised.
3. *Rĕg-or, rĕg-ĕris vel reg-ĕre, rect-us sum vel fui ;*
reg-i ; rec-tus, regén-dus ; to be ruled.
4. *Aud-ior, āud-īris vel aud-īre, audit-us sum vel fui ;*
aud-īri ; audit-us, audién-dus ; to be heard.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Amor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. <i>Āmor,</i>	<i>I am loved.</i>
<i>amāris, v. am-āre,</i>	<i>you are loved.</i>
<i>am-ātur,</i>	<i>he is loved.</i>
Plur. <i>Am-āmur,</i>	<i>We are loved.</i>
<i>am-āmīni,</i>	<i>ye are loved.</i>
<i>am-antur,</i>	<i>they are loved.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing. <i>Am-ābar,</i>	<i>I was loved.</i>
<i>am-ābāris, v. -ābāre,</i>	<i>you were loved.</i>
<i>am-ābātur,</i>	<i>he was loved.</i>
Plur. <i>Am-ābāmur,</i>	<i>We were loved.</i>
<i>am-ābāmīni,</i>	<i>ye were loved.</i>
<i>am-ābantur,</i>	<i>they were loved.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing. <i>Amāt-us sum, vel fui,</i>	<i>I have been loved.</i>
<i>amāt-us es, v. fuisti,</i>	<i>you have been loved.</i>
<i>amāt-us est, v. fuit,</i>	<i>he has been loved.</i>
Plur. <i>Amāt-i sūmus, v. fuīmus,</i>	<i>We have been loved.</i>
<i>amāt-i estis, v. fuistis,</i>	<i>ye have been loved.</i>
<i>amāt-i sunt, fuērunt, v. -ēre, they have been loved.</i>	

* There are, however, very few instances (if any) of such forms as *amatus fui* being used by good authors as the perfect tense, and equivalent to *amatus sum*.

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Amāt-us ēram, v. fuēram, *I had been loved.*
 amāt-us ēras, v. fuēras, *you had been loved.*
 amāt-us ērat, v. fuērat, *he had been loved.*

Plur. Amāt-i ēramus, v. fuēramus, *We had been loved.*
 amāt-i ērātis, v. fuērātis, *ye had been loved.*
 amāt-i ērant, v. fuērant, *they had been loved.*

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Am-ābor, *I shall be loved.*
 am-ābēris, v. -ābēre, *you will be loved.*
 am-ābitur, *he will be loved.*

Plur. Am-ābimur, *We shall be loved.*
 am-ābimini, *ye will be loved.*
 am-ābuntur, *they will be loved.*

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us ēro, v. fuēro, *I shall have been loved.*
 amāt-us ēris, v. fuēris, *you will have been loved.*
 amāt-us ērit, v. fuērit, *he will have been loved.*

Plur. Amāt-i ērimus, v. fuērimus, *We shall have been loved.*
 amāt-i ēritis, v. fuēritis, *ye will have been loved.*
 amāt-i ērunt, v. fuērint, *they will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Am-āre, amātor, *Be thou loved.*
 am-ātor, *let him be loved.*

Plur. Am-āmini, am-āminor, *Be ye loved.*
 am-antor, *let them be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Am-er, *I may be loved.*
 am-ēris, v. am-ēre, *you may be loved.*
 am-etur, *he may be loved.*

Plur. Am-ēmur, *We may be loved.*
 am-ēmini, *ye may be loved.*
 am-entur, *they may be loved.*

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing. Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved.</i>
am-ārēris, v. -ārēre,	<i>you might be loved.</i>
am-ārētur,	<i>he might be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-ārēmur,	<i>We might be loved.</i>
am-ārēmini,	<i>ye might be loved.</i>
am-ārentur,	<i>they might be loved.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us sim, v. fuerim,	<i>I may have been loved.</i>
amāt-us sis, v. fueris,	<i>you may have been loved.</i>
amāt-us sit, v. fuerit,	<i>he may have been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i simus, v. fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved.</i>
amāt-i sitis, v. fueritis,	<i>ye may have been loved.</i>
amāt-i sint, v. fuerint,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us essem, v. fuisset,	<i>I would have been loved.</i>
amāt-us esses, v. fuisses,	<i>you would have been loved.</i>
amāt-us esset, v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i essemus, v. fuissēmus,	<i>We would have been loved.</i>
amāt-i essētis, v. fuissētis,	<i>ye would have been loved.</i>
amāt-i essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Am-āri,	<i>to be loved.</i>
---------	---------------------

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Amāt-um esse, vel fuisse,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
---------------------------	----------------------------

Future Tense.

Amāt-um iri,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect Tense.

Amāt-us,	<i>loved, or, being loved.</i>
----------	--------------------------------

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Amān-dus,	<i>to be loved.</i>
-----------	---------------------

SECOND CONJUGATION. — Moneor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Mōn-eor,	<i>I am advised.</i>
mon-ēris, v. -ēre,	<i>you are advised.</i>
mon-ētur,	<i>he is advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ēmur,	<i>We are advised.</i>
mon-ēmīni,	<i>ye are advised.</i>
mon-entur,	<i>they are advised.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing. Mon-ēbar,	<i>I was advised.</i>
mon-ēbāris, v. -ebāre,	<i>you were advised.</i>
mon-ēbātur,	<i>he was advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ēbāmur,	<i>We were advised.</i>
mon-ēbāmīni,	<i>ye were advised.</i>
mon-ēbantur,	<i>they were advised.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us sum, v. fui,	<i>I have been advised.</i>
monīt-us es, v. fuisti,	<i>you have been advised.</i>
monīt-us est, v. fuit,	<i>he has been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i sumus, v. fuīmus,	<i>We have been advised.</i>
monīt-i estis, v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been advised.</i>
monīt-i sunt, fuērunt, v. fuēre,	<i>they have been advised.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Monīt-us ēram, v. fuēram,	<i>I had been advised.</i>
monīt-us ēras, v. fuēras,	<i>you had been advised.</i>
monīt-us ērat, v. fuērat,	<i>he had been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i ērāmus, v. fuērāmus,	<i>We had been advised.</i>
monīt-i ērātis, v. fuērātis,	<i>ye had been advised.</i>
monīt-i ērant, v. fuērant,	<i>they had been advised.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Mon-ēbor,	<i>I shall be advised.</i>
mon-ēbēris, v. ēbēre,	<i>you will be advised.</i>
mon-ēbitur,	<i>he will be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ēbimur,	<i>We shall be advised.</i>
mon-ēbimīni,	<i>ye will be advised.</i>
mon-ēbuntur,	<i>they will be advised.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us ēro, v. fuēro,	<i>I shall have been advised.</i>
monīt-us ēris, v. fuēris,	<i>you will have been advised.</i>
monīt-us ērit, v. fuērit,	<i>he will have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i ērimus, v. fuērimus,	<i>We shall have been advised.</i>
monīt-i eritis, v. fuērītis,	<i>ye will have been advised.</i>
monīt-i erunt, v. fuērīnt,	<i>they will have been advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Mon-ēre, mon-ētor,	<i>Be thou advised.</i>
mon-ētor,	<i>let him be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ēmīni, mon-ēmīnor,	<i>Be ye advised.</i>
mon-entor,	<i>let them be advised.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may be.*

Sing. Mon-ear,	<i>I may be advised.</i>
mon-eāris, v. mon-eāre,	<i>you may be advised.</i>
mon-eātur,	<i>he may be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-eāmur,	<i>We may be advised.</i>
mon-eāmīni,	<i>ye may be advised.</i>
mon-eantur,	<i>they may be advised.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing. Mon-ērer,	<i>I might be advised.</i>
mon-ērēris, v. -ērēre,	<i>you might be advised.</i>
mon-ērētur,	<i>he might be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ērēmur,	<i>We might be advised.</i>
mon-ērēmīni,	<i>ye might be advised.</i>
mon-ērentur,	<i>they might be advised.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us sim, v. fuërim,	<i>I may have been advised.</i>
monīt-us sis, v. fuëris,	<i>you may have been advised.</i>
monīt-us sit, v. fuërit,	<i>he may have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i simus, v. fuërimus,	<i>We may have been advised.</i>
monīt-i sitis, v. fuëritis,	<i>ye may have been advised.</i>
monīt-i sint, v. fuërint,	<i>they may have been advised.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us essem, v. fuissem,	<i>I would have been advised.</i>
monīt-us esses, v. fuisses,	<i>you would have been advised.</i>
monīt-us esset, v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i essēmus, v. fuissēmus,	<i>We would have been advised.</i>
monīt-i essētis, v. fuissētis,	<i>ye would have been advised.</i>
monīt-i essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been advised.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Mon-ēri, *to be advised.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Monīt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been advised.*

Future Tense.

Monīt-um iri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Monīt-us, *advised, or, being advised.*

The Participle in *dus*, or the gerundive.

Monen-dus, *to be advised.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rēgor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Rēg-or,	<i>I am ruled.</i>
reg-ēris, v. reg-ēre,	<i>you are ruled.</i>
reg-itur,	<i>he is ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-īmur,	<i>We are ruled.</i>
reg-īmini,	<i>ye are ruled.</i>
reg-untur,	<i>they are ruled.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing. Reg-ēbar,	<i>I was ruled.</i>
reg-ēbaris, v. ēbāre,	<i>you were ruled.</i>
reg-ēbatur,	<i>he was ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ēbāmur,	<i>We were ruled.</i>
reg-ēbāmini,	<i>ye were ruled.</i>
reg-ēbantur,	<i>they were ruled.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing. Rect-us sum, v. fui,	<i>I have been ruled.</i>
rect-us es, v. fuisti,	<i>you have been ruled.</i>
rect-us est, v. fuit,	<i>he has been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i sūmus, v. fuīmus,	<i>We have been ruled.</i>
rect-i estis, v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sunt, fuērunt, v. fuēre,	<i>they have been ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Rect-us ēram, v. fuēram,	<i>I had been ruled.</i>
rect-us ēras, v. fuēras,	<i>you had been ruled.</i>
rect-us ērat, v. fuērat,	<i>he had been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i ērāmus, v. fuērāmus,	<i>We had been ruled.</i>
rect-i ērātis, v. fuērātis,	<i>ye had been ruled.</i>
rect-i ērant, v. fuērant,	<i>they had been ruled.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Reg-ar,	<i>I shall be ruled.</i>
reg-ēris, v. reg-ēre,	<i>you will be ruled.</i>
reg-etur,	<i>he will be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ēmur,	<i>We shall be ruled.</i>
reg-ēmini,	<i>ye will be ruled.</i>
reg-entur,	<i>they will be ruled.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Rect-us ěro, <i>v.</i> fuěro,	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i>
rect-us ěris, <i>v.</i> fuěris,	<i>you will have been ruled.</i>
rect-us ěrit, <i>v.</i> fuěrit,	<i>he will have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i ěrimus <i>v.</i> fuěrimus,	<i>We shall have been ruled.</i>
rect-i ěritis, <i>v.</i> fuěritis,	<i>ye will have been ruled.</i>
rect-i ěrunt, <i>v.</i> fuěrint,	<i>they will have been ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Rĕg-ĕre, reg-ĭtor,	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>
reg-ĭtor,	<i>let him be ruled.</i>
Plur. Rĕg-ĭmini, reg-ĭminor,	<i>Be ye ruled.</i>
reg-untor,	<i>let them be ruled.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may be.*

Sing. Reg-ar,	<i>I may be ruled.</i>
reg-āris, <i>v.</i> reg-āre,	<i>you may be ruled.</i>
reg-ātur,	<i>he may be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-āmur,	<i>We may be ruled.</i>
reg-āmini,	<i>ye may be ruled.</i>
reg-antur,	<i>they may be ruled.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might be.*

Sing. Reg-ĕrer,	<i>I might be ruled.</i>
reg-ĕrĕris, <i>v.</i> reg-ĕrĕre,	<i>you might be ruled.</i>
reg-ĕrĕtur,	<i>he might be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ĕrĕmur,	<i>We might be ruled.</i>
reg-ĕrĕmini,	<i>ye might be ruled.</i>
reg-ĕrentur,	<i>they might be ruled.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Rect-us sim, <i>v.</i> fuĕrim,	<i>I may have been ruled.</i>
rect-us sis, <i>v.</i> fuĕris,	<i>you may have been ruled.</i>
rect-us sit, <i>v.</i> fuĕrit,	<i>he may have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i simus, <i>v.</i> fuĕrimus,	<i>We may have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sitis, <i>v.</i> fuĕritis,	<i>you may have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sint, <i>v.</i> fuĕrint,	<i>they may have been ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Rect-us essem, v. fuisset,	<i>I would have been ruled.</i>
rect-us esses, v. fuisses,	<i>you would have been ruled.</i>
rect-us esset, v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i essēmus, v. fuissēmus,	<i>We would have been ruled.</i>
rect-i essētis, v. fuissētis,	<i>ye would have been ruled.</i>
rect-i essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been ruled.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Reg-i, *to bē ruled.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Rect-um esse, *vel*, fuisse, *to have been ruled.*

Future Tense.

Rect-um iri, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLE of the Perfect Tense.

Rect-us, *ruled, or, being ruled.*The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.Regen-dus, *to be ruled.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audior.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Aud-ior,	<i>I am heard.</i>
aud-iris, v. aud-ire,	<i>you are heard.</i>
aud-itur,	<i>he is heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-imur,	<i>We are heard.</i>
aud-imini,	<i>ye are heard.</i>
aud-iuntur,	<i>they are heard.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing. Aud-iēbar,	<i>I was heard.</i>
aud-iēbāris, <i>v.</i> aud-iēbāre,	<i>you were heard.</i>
aud-iēbātur,	<i>he was heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iēbāmur,	<i>We were heard.</i>
aud-iēbāmini,	<i>ye were heard.</i>
aud-iēbantur,	<i>they were heard.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us sum, <i>v.</i> fui,	<i>I have been heard.</i>
audīt-us es, <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>you have been heard.</i>
audīt-us est, <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he has been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i sūmus, <i>v.</i> fuīmus,	<i>We have been heard.</i>
audīt-i estis, <i>v.</i> fuistis,	<i>ye have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sunt, fuērunt, <i>v.</i> fuēre,	<i>they have been heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Audīt-us ēram, <i>v.</i> fuēram,	<i>I had been heard.</i>
audīt-us ēras, <i>v.</i> fuēras,	<i>you had been heard.</i>
audīt-us ērat, <i>v.</i> fuērat,	<i>he had been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i ērāmus, <i>v.</i> fuērāmus,	<i>We had been heard.</i>
audīt-i ērātis, <i>v.</i> fuērātis,	<i>ye had been heard.</i>
audīt-i ērant, <i>v.</i> fuērant,	<i>they had been heard.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Aud-iar,	<i>I shall be heard.</i>
aud-iēris, <i>v.</i> aud-iēre,	<i>you will be heard.</i>
aud-iētur,	<i>he will be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iēmur,	<i>We shall be heard.</i>
aud-iēmīni,	<i>ye will be heard.</i>
aud-ientur,	<i>they will be heard.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us ēro, <i>v.</i> fuēro,	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
audīt-us ēris, <i>v.</i> fuēris,	<i>you will have been heard.</i>
audīt-us ērit, <i>v.</i> fuērit,	<i>he will have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i ērimus, <i>v.</i> fuērimus,	<i>We shall have been heard.</i>
audīt-i ēritis, <i>v.</i> fuēritis,	<i>you will have been heard.</i>
audīt-i ērunt, <i>v.</i> fuērint,	<i>they will have been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. Aud-īre, aud-itor,	<i>Be thou heard.</i>
audi-tor,	<i>let him be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-īmini, aud-iminor,	<i>Be ye heard.</i>
aud-iuntor,	<i>let them be heard.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may be.*

Sing. Aud-iar,	<i>I may be heard.</i>
aud-iāris, v. aud-iāre,	<i>you may be heard.</i>
aud-iātur,	<i>he may be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iāmur,	<i>We may be heard.</i>
aud-iāmini,	<i>ye may be heard.</i>
aud-iantur,	<i>they may be heard.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might be.*

Sing. Aud-īrer,	<i>I might be heard.</i>
aud-īrēris, v. aud-īrere,	<i>you might be heard.</i>
aud-īrētur,	<i>he might be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-īrēmur,	<i>We might be heard.</i>
aud-īrēmini,	<i>ye might be heard.</i>
aud-īrentur,	<i>they might be heard.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us sim, v. fuërim,	<i>I may have been heard.</i>
audīt-us sis, v. fuëris,	<i>you may have been heard.</i>
audīt-us sit, v. fuërit,	<i>he may have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i simus, v. fuërimus,	<i>We may have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sītis, v. fuëritis,	<i>ye may have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sint, v. fuërint,	<i>they may have been heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us essem, v. fuissem,	<i>I would have been heard.</i>
audīt-us esses, v. fuisses,	<i>you would have been heard.</i>
audīt-us esset, v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i essemus, v. fuissēmus,	<i>We would have been heard.</i>
audīt-i essētis, v. fuissētis,	<i>ye would have been heard.</i>
audīt-i essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been heard.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Aud-iri, *to be heard.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Audit-um esse, *vel*, fuisse, *to have been heard.*

Future Tense.

Audit-um iri, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE of the Preterperfect Tense.

Audit-us, *heard, or, being heard.*

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Audien-dus, *to be heard.*

The two Participles future, in *rus* and in *dus*, are often so combined with the tenses of *sum*, that a new conjugation called the *periphrastic* conjugation is formed in the following manner:—

ACTIVE.

Pres. Amaturus sum, etc. *I am about to love.*
 Imperf. Amaturus eram, etc. *I was about to love.*
 Perf. Amaturus fui, etc. *I have been about to love.*
 Pluperf. Amaturus fueram, etc. *I had been about to love.*
 1st Fut. Amaturus ero, etc. *I shall be about to love.*
 2nd Fut. Amaturus fuero, etc. *I shall have been about to love.*

And the other moods are formed from the indicative, as is shewn in the conjugation of *sum*:—

PASSIVE.

Pres. Amandus sum, *I am meet to be loved.*
 Imperf. Amandus eram, *I was meet to be loved.*
 Perf. Amandus fui, *I have been meet to be loved.*
 Pluperf. Amandus fueram, *I had been meet to be loved.*
 1st Fut. Amandus ero, *I shall be meet to be loved.*
 2nd Fut. Amandus fuero, *I shall have been meet to be loved.*

DEPONENT verbs are conjugated in this manner :

Hortor, hortāris, *v.* hortāre, hortātus sum, *v.* fui, hortāri, hortandi, hortando, hortandum, hortatum, hortatu, hortans, hortatus, hortaturus, hortandus.

And so in the other conjugations.

From the third person singular of passive verbs an impersonal verb is formed ; and this third person passive exists in words which neither have, nor are capable of having, a regular passive voice : as,

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
Itur, <i>that is,</i>	Itur a me, <i>I go.</i>	itum est, <i>that is,</i>	itum est a me, <i>I went.</i>
	Itur a te, <i>you go.</i>		itum est a te, <i>you went.</i>
	Itur ab illo, <i>he goes.</i>		itum est ab illo, <i>he went.</i>
	Itur a nobis, <i>we go.</i>		itum est a nobis, <i>we went.</i>
	Itur a vobis, <i>ye go.</i>		itum est a vobis, <i>ye went.</i>
	Itur ab illis, <i>they go.</i>		itum est ab illis, <i>they went.</i>
<i>Future.</i>			
Eundum est, <i>that is,</i>	Eundum est a me, <i>I must go.</i>		
	Eundum est a te, <i>you must go.</i>		
	Eundum est ab illo, <i>he must go.</i>		
	Eundum est a nobis, <i>we must go.</i>		
	Eundum est a vobis, <i>ye must go.</i>		
	Eundum est ab illis, <i>they must go.</i>		

And so in all other tenses. The pronoun is scarcely ever expressed in Latin with these impersonals, but is left to be inferred from the context ; as, pugnātum est, *they fought*, vivitur, *one lives*, etc.

DECLENSION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

CERTAIN verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the manner following :—

1. Possum, pōtes, pōtui, posse, pōtens :* *to be able.*
2. Volo, vis, vōlui, velle ; vōlendi, vōlendo, vōlendum ; volens : *to be willing.*

* *Potens* is, however, only actually used as an adjective in the sense of *powerful*.

3. Nōlo, nonvis, nōlui, nolle ; nōlendi, nōlendo, nōlendum ; nōlens : *to be unwilling.*

4. Mālo, māvis, mālui, malle ; mālendi, mālendo, mālendum ; mālens : *to be more willing, or, to have rather.*

5. Ēdo, ēdis *vel* ēs, ēdi, ēdēre *vel* esse ; ēdendi, ēdendo, ēdendum ; ēsum, ēsu ; ēdens, ēsurus : *to eat.*

6. Fēro, fers, tūli, ferre ; fērendi, fērendo, fērendum ; lātum, lātu ; fērens, lātūrus : *to bear, or, suffer.*

7. Fīo, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fīēri ; factus, faciendus : *to be made, or, done.*

8. Fēror, ferris *vel* ferre, lātus sum *vel* fui, ferri ; lātus, fērendus : *to be borne, or, suffered.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I am able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Possūm,	pōtes,	pōtest,	Possūmus,	potestis,	possunt.
Vōlo,	vis,	vult,	vōlūmus,	vultis,	vōlant.
Nōlo,	nonvis,	nonvult	nōlūmus,	nonvultis,	nōlant.
Mālo,	māvis,	māvult,	mālūmus,	māvultis,	mālunt.
Ēdo,	ēdis, <i>v. es,</i>	ēdit, <i>v. est,</i>	ēdīmus,	ēditis, <i>v. estis,</i>	ēdunt.
Fēro,	fers,	fert,	fērīmus,	fertis,	fērunt.
Fīo,	fis,	fit,	fīmus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Fēror,	ferris, <i>v. ferre,</i>	fertur,	fērīmur,	ferīmini,	feruntur.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*I was able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōt-eram,	ēras	ērat,	ērāmus,	ērātis,	ērant.
Vōlē-bam,	bas,	bat,	bāmus,	bātis,	bant.
Nōlē-bam,					
Mālē-bam,					
Ēdē-bam,					
Fērē-bam,					
Fīē-bam,					
Fēre-bar,	bāris, <i>v. bāre,</i>	bātur,	bāmur,	bāmīni,	bantur.

3. Perfect Tense.—*I have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pötu-i, Völu-i, Nölu-i, Mälu-i, Ed-i, Tül-i,	}	isti it,	ĩmus, istis, ěrunt, <i>vel</i> ěre.		
Fact-us,					
Lät-us,					
	sum, es, est,		i sũmus, estis, sunt, v. fuěrunt,		
	v. v. v.		v. v. v.		
	fui ; fuisti ; fuit;		fuĩmus ; fuistis ; fuěre.		

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*I had been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pötu-ěram, Völu-ěram, Nölu-ěram, Mälu-ěram, Ed-ěram, Tül-ěram,	}	ěras, ěrat,	ěrāmus, ěrātis, ěrant.		
Fact-us,					
Lät-us,					
	ěram, ěras, ěrat,		i ěrāmus, ěrātis, ěrant,		
	v. v. v.		v. v. v.		
	fuěram ; -ěras ; -ěrat ;		fuěrāmus ; fuěrātis ; fuěrant.		

5. First Future Tense.—*I shall, or, will be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pöt-ěro, Völ-am, Nöl-am, Mäl-am, Ĕd-am, Fĕr-am, Fĩ-am,	}	ěrit,	ěrĩmus, ěrītis, ěrunt.		
Fĕr-ar,					
	ěris, ěrit,		ěrĩmus, ěrītis, ěrunt.		
	es, et,		ěmus, ětis, ent.		
	ěris, v. ěre ; ětur,		ěmur, ěmĩni, entur.		

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*I shall have been able.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pötuëro, Völuëro, Nöluëro, Mäluëro, Edëro, Tüläro,	ëris,	ërit,	ërimus,	ëritis,	ërint.
Factus,					
Lätus,	ëro,	ëris,	Facti,	ërimus,	ëritis,
	v.	v.		v.	v.
	fuëro,	fuëris,	Lati,	fuërimus,	fuëritis,
		fuërit,		fuërint.	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum, volo, and malo*, have no Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—*be thou unwilling, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nöli, nölito ;	nölite, nölitöte.
Edë, ëdïto, <i>vel</i> Es, esto ;	ëdïte, ëdïtöte, <i>vel</i> , este,
ëdïto, <i>vel</i> , esto ;	estote ; ëdunto.
Fer, ferto ; ferto ;	ferte, fertote ; ferunto.
Fï, fïto ; fïto ;	fïte, fïtote ; fiunto.
Fer-re, tor ; fertor ;	fërimïn-i, -or ; feruntor.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I may be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Poss-im, } Vël-im, } Nöl-im, } Mäl-im, }	ïmus, itis, int.
Ed-am, } Fër-am, } Fï-am, }	
Fër-ar, -äris, v. äre ; ätur.	
	āmus, ātis, ant.
	āmur, āmīni, antur.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*I might be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Poss-em,	}	es, et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
Vell-em,					
Noll-em,					
Mall-em,					
Ēdër-em,					
vel,					
Ess-em,					
Ferr-em,					
Fïër-em,					
Ferr-er,	-ēris, v. ēre ; ētur,		ēmur,	ēmīni,	entur.

3. Perfect Tense.—*I may have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>				
Pötu-ërim,	}		ëris, ërit,	ërimus,	ëritis,	ërint.		
Völu-ërim,								
Nölu-ërim,								
Malu-ërim,								
Ed-ërim,								
Tül-ërim,	{			i simus,	sitis,	sint,		
Fact-us,								
Lät-us,	{			fuë-rim; ris; rit.			fuërimus; fuëritis; fuërint.	

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*I should have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pötu-issem,	}	isses, isset,	issēmus,	issētis,	issent.
Völu-issem,					
Nölu-issem,					
Malu-issem,					
Ed-issem,					
Tül-issem,	{	essem, esses, esset,	i essēmus,	essētis,	essent,
Fact-us,					
Lät-us,	{ fu-issem; isses; isset.		fuissēmus; fuissētis; fuissent.		

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—*to be able, &c.*

Posse.	Ēdere, <i>vel</i> , esse.
Velle.	Ferre.
Nolle.	Fīeri.
Malle.	Ferri.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—*to have been able, &c.*

Pōtuisse.	Edisse.
Vōluisse.	Tūlissee.
Nōluisse.	Factum esse, <i>vel</i> , fuisse.
Māluisse.	Lātum esse, <i>vel</i> , fuisse.

Future Tense.—*to be about to eat, &c.*

Esūrum esse.	Factum iri.
Lātūrum esse.	Lātum iri.

Obs. *Possum, volo, nolo, malo*, have no Future Tense of the Infinitive mood.

EO, to go, is also a verb irregular.

Eo, is, *īvi, īre, eundi, eundo, eundum, itum, itu, iens, itūrus.

Indic. M. } *Sing.* Eo, is, it. *Pl.* Imus, itis, eunt.
Pres. T. }

Imp. Tense. Sing. Ibam, ibas, ibat. *Pl.* -āmus, -ātis, -ant.

Perf. Tense. Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, ivērunt, v. ēre.

Pluperf. Tense. Ivēram, -as, -at; -amus, -ātis, -ant.

First Fut. Sing. Ibo, ibis, ibit. *Pl.* -īmus, -itis, -unt.

2nd Fut. Ivēro, ivēris, ivērit; ivērīmus, ivērītis, ivērint.

Imper. M. Sing. I, ito; ito. *Pl.* ite, itote; eunto.

Potent. M. Sing. Eam, eas, eat. *Pl.* Eāmus, eātis, eant.

Imperf. Irem, etc.

Perf. Ivērim, etc.

Pluperf. Ivīssem, etc.

Gerunds; Eundi, eundo, eundum.

Participle Pres. T. Iens, *gen.* eūntis.

Participle Future, Itūrus.†

* In all the compounds of *eo*, as *redeo, abeo*, etc. this tense is almost invariably found *ii*, not *ivi*; as, *redii, abii*, etc.

† *Eo* has no passive voice except in the third sing. used as an imper-

Obs. In like manner are the compounds of *Eo* declined; also *queo*, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable; except that these two last have no Imperative mood or Gerunds.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

VERBS are called *defective*, that have only some particular Tenses and Persons; as,

Aio, I say.

Ind. M. Pres. T. S. Aio, ais, ait. *Pl.* — — Aiunt.

Imp. T. Sing. Aiē-bam, -bas, -bat. *Pl.* -bamus, -batis, -bant.

Perf. Tense. Sing. — Ait.

Sub. or Potent. M. Pres. T. Sing. — Aias, aiat. *Pl.* aiant.

Particip. Pres. Tense. Aiens.

Fāri, to speak.

Pres. 3d. Sing. Fātur.

Perf. Fātus sum, es, etc.

Pluperf. Fātus eram, etc.

First Fut. Fābor—no other person.

Imper. Fāre.

Gerunds. Fandi, Fando.

Supine. Fatu. — *Part. Perf.* Fatus. — *Part. Pass.*
[Fandus.]

Āve, Hail!

Imper. M. Sing.—Āve, āvēto.—*Pl.* Āvēte, avetote.—
Infinitive Mood. Āvēre.

Salve, Hail!

Indicat. M. Future T. Sing. — Salvēbis.

Imper. M. S.—Salve, salveto.—*Pl.* Salvēte, salvētōte.
Infinitive M. Salvēre.

Cēdo, Give me.

Imper. M. Sing.—Cēdo.—*Pl.*—Cette.*

sonal verb, as has been shewn above (p. 56), and the passive participle *indus*, or gerundive *eundus*; but some of its compounds, *ādeo*, to approach, *prætereo*, to pass by, &c. have a passive voice, formed regularly from the active; as, *adcor*, *adiris*, *aditur*, etc. imperf. *adibar*, etc.

* Found only in the oldest writers.

Quæso, *I pray.*

Indic. M. Pres. T. S. Quæso. *Pl.* Quæsumus.

Inquam, *I say.*

Ind. M. Pres. T. S. Inquam, -quis, -quit. *Pl.* Inquimus, inquitis, inquiunt.

Preterimp. T. S.—Inquiebat. *Pl.*—Inquiebant.

Preterp. T. S.—Inquisti.

Future T. Sing.—Inquies, inquiet.

Cæpi, I have begun, *mēmīni*, I remember, *nōvi*, I know, *odi*, I hate, are perfects of obsolete presents, (except *novi*, which is also the perfect of *nosco*,) and have these tenses only which are derived from the perfect. Their pluperfect tense has the sense of the imperfect; i. e. *memineram*, "I remembered," not, "I had remembered," etc. and the second future has the sense of the first future, as *odero* "I shall hate," not "I shall have hated."

<i>Cæpi</i> ,	<i>Mēmīni</i> ,	(So, <i>ōdi</i> , <i>nōvi</i> .)
<i>Cæpisti</i> ,	<i>Mēmīnisti</i> ,	
<i>Cæpit</i> ,	<i>Mēmīnit</i> ,	
<i>Cæpimus</i> ,	<i>Mēmīnimus</i> ,	
<i>Cæpistis</i> ,	<i>Mēmīnistis</i> ,	
<i>Cæperunt</i> , v. <i>ēre</i> .	<i>Mēmīnerunt</i> , v. <i>ēre</i> .	

Pluperf. *Cæpĕram*, *meminĕram*, *ōdĕram*, *nōvēram*.

Future. *Cæpĕro*, *mēmīnĕro*, *ōdĕro*, *nōvēro*.

Imper. *Memento*, *mementōte* — The other verbs have no imperative.

Perf. *Cæpĕrim*, *mēmīnĕrim*, *ōdĕrim*, *nōvērim*.

Pluperf. *Cæpisse*, *meminisse*, *odisse*, *novisse*.

Infin. *Cæpisse*, *mēmīnis*, *ōdisse*, *nōvisse*.

Part. fut. act. *Cæpturus*, *ōsūrus*.—The others have no participle.

Perf. part. pass. *Cæptus*.

Ausim, I may dare, an old form of the present subjunctive of *audeo*.

Ausim, *ausis*, *ausit*;—*ausint*.

Faxim, I may do, a similar form from *facio*.

Faxim, *faxis*, *faxit*; *faximus*, *faxitis*, *faxint*.

Fut. faxo.

ADVERBS.

An *Adverb* is a part of speech joined to verbs and nouns adjective (sometimes even to other adverbs) to qualify them; as, *loquitur bene*, he speaks well; *scribunt male*, they write badly.*

CONJUNCTIONS.

A *Conjunction* is a part of speech which joins sentences or words together: some connect things of the same kind, and are called *copulative conjunctions*; some connect things which are distinct from each other, and are called *disjunctive conjunctions*.—The copulative conjunctions are *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *que*, *nec* *non*, “and,” *nēque*, “nor.”—The disjunctive conjunctions are *aut*, *vel*, *ve*, *sive*, *seu*, “or.”

PREPOSITIONS.

A *Preposition* is a part of speech which expresses the relation of nouns to one another, or to verbs; as, *iter per Italiam*, a journey through Italy; *exit e domo*, he goes out of the house.

These Prepositions have an *Accusative* case after them.

Ad, to.

Erga, towards.

Adversum, *Adversus*, against,

Extra, without.

towards.

Infra, beneath, below.

Ante, before.

Inter, between, or among.

Apud, at, or near.

Intra, within.

Circa, *circum*, about.

Juxta, beside, or near to.

Circiter, about (of time, or number.)

Ob, on account of, before, (as *ob oculos*, before the eyes.)

Cis, *citra*, on this side.

Pōnes, in the power of.

Contra, against.

Per, through.

* When derived from adjectives, adverbs have comparative and superlative degrees, formed from the corresponding degrees of the adjectives; as, from *doctus* learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus*, are derived *docte* learnedly, *doctius* more learnedly, *doctissime* most learnedly.

<i>Pōne</i> , behind.	<i>Propter</i> , on account of,
<i>Post</i> , after.	near to.
<i>Præter</i> , besides, except, before, (as, <i>præter cæteros</i> , before others.)	<i>Secundum</i> , according to.
	<i>Supra</i> , above.
<i>Prōpe</i> , (and compar. and superl. <i>prōpius</i> , <i>proxime</i>)	<i>Trans</i> , on the farther side.
	<i>Versus</i> , towards.
nigh, or near to.	<i>Ultra</i> , beyond.

The Prepositions following have an *Ablative* case after them.

<i>A</i> , (and before consonants <i>ab</i>)* from, by.	<i>E</i> , <i>ex</i> , from, out of, in (as <i>ex ordine</i> , in order.)
<i>Absque</i> , without.	<i>Præ</i> ,† before, in comparison
<i>Coram</i> , before, or in presence of.	of, on account of.
<i>Cum</i> , with.	<i>Pro</i> , for, in front of.
<i>De</i> , from, concerning.	<i>Sine</i> , without.
	<i>Tenus</i> , up to, as far as.‡

The prepositions *versus* and *tenus* are always, *penes* sometimes, put after the noun governed by them: so, when the noun governed by them is the relative, *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter*, are also placed sometimes after their case: when *cum* is joined with *me*, *nobis*, *te*, *vobis*, *se*, or the relative, it is put after them, and united with them so as to make one word; as, *mecum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum*, etc.

The Prepositions following have either an *Accusative* or an *Ablative* case after them.

In, for *into*, signifying motion *towards*, *against*, *over*, etc. has an *accusative* case; as, *Eo in urbem*, I go into the city.

* Before *te*, *abs* is also used in the same sense by Cicero, and before other words by Terence and older writers. It is never used in poetry.

† *Præ* signifies of *place*, with verbs of motion only, and with pronouns.

‡ *Tenus* is used also with a genitive, when the noun is in the plural number; and once by Livy with a noun in the singular; *Corcīræ tēnus*, as far as Corcyra.

In, meaning "in," has the ablative case ; as, *In illo spes est*, my hope is in him.

Sub, after verbs of motion, governs an accusative case, and also when it denotes time ; as, *Mittitur sub jūgum*, he is sent under the yoke ; *sub noctem*, about nightfall.

When it means "under," it governs an ablative case ; as, *Sub terrā*, under the earth.

Subter, under, beneath, governs the accusative ; the ablative only in poetry ; (it is very rarely used at all.)

Sūper, when it means "on, above, besides," governs the accusative case ; as, *sūper terram*, above the earth : when it means "concerning, about," it governs the ablative ; as, *Rōgītans multa sūper Priamo*, asking many things about Priam.

Besides these regular prepositions, some adverbs are used occasionally as prepositions, especially in poetry.

With the Accusative.

Usque (properly, and more usually, in good prose invariably, *usque ad*,) as far as.

With the Ablative.

Pālam, in the presence of.

Prōcul, (properly, and more usually *procul a*,) far from.

Simul, (only poetically for *simul cum*,) together with.

With the Accusative or Ablative.

Clam, without the knowledge of, (the accusative, however, is very rare and antiquated.)

OF AN INTERJECTION.

AN INTERJECTION is a part of speech which betokens a sudden motion of the mind, be it grief, or joy, or other passion.

THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

THERE are three Concorde, or Agreements, in Latin :

1. Between the nominative case and the verb.
2. Between the substantive and the adjective.
3. Between the antecedent and the relative.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

A VERB agrees with its nominative case in number and person.

In order to find out the nominative case, ask the question *who*, or *what*? with the verb; and the word that answers to the question, is the nominative case to the verb; as, *who reads? who regards not?*

The *master* reads, but *ye* regard not.
Præceptor ^b *legit*, *vos verò* ^b *negligitis*.

Sometimes the infinitive mood of a verb is used as a neuter substantive in the nominative, in which case the verb agrees with that, as if it were a noun; as,

Diluculo ^a *surgere saluberrimum* ^b *est*.

To rise betimes in the morning is most wholesome.

When two or more substantives are so joined in one sentence, that the verb depends on both or on all of them, the verb is usually put in the plural number, and agrees especially with the nominative case of the most worthy person:* when, however, the nouns denote things, not persons, the verb is often kept in the singular number; as, *Ego et tu sumus in tuto*, I and you are in safety: *cum tempus necessitasque postulat*, when time and necessity require.

Sometimes also a noun of multitude, (that is, a noun expressing more persons or things than one,) though in the singular number itself, is followed by a verb in the plural number; as, *Turba ruunt*, the crowd rushes on.

When the nominative case to the verb is a personal pronoun, it is usually omitted in Latin, unless particular emphasis be desired; as, He governs France, *Regit Galliam*: I am wiser than you, *Ego sum te sapientior*.

* In grammatical language, the first person is reckoned more worthy than the second, and the second than the third.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

The adjective agrees with its substantive in case, gender, and number ; as,

^a *Amicus* ^b *certus* in ^a *re* ^b *incertâ* *cernitur*.

A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter.

When two or more substantives come together in one sentence, and have one adjective referring to both of them, the adjective agrees with the substantive of the most worthy gender, (the masculine being accounted more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine more worthy than the neuter.) But, when the nouns both denote things, the adjective is often put in the neuter ; when they denote both persons and things, the adjective may either agree with the noun denoting the person, or be put in the neuter gender ; as, *Mihi pater et mater mortui sunt*, my father and mother are dead : *ira et avaritia potentia sunt*, anger and avarice are powerful.

Sometimes the infinitive mood of a verb is used as a noun of the neuter gender, and the adjective agrees with it as if it were such a noun : and sometimes an entire sentence supplies the place of the substantive, and the adjective which is applied to it is put in the neuter gender ; as, *Errare humanum est*, to err is human.

Sometimes, when persons are denoted by neuter substantives, the adjective, nevertheless, is put in the masculine or feminine gender ; as, *Millia triginta servorum capti sunt*, thirty thousand slaves were taken.

When in English the word *man*, or *thing*, is put with an adjective, you may in Latin leave out the substantive, and put the adjective in the masculine or neuter gender ; as,

Multi falluntur, many men are deceived.

Multa me impediērunt, many things have hindered me.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

WHEN you have a relative, ask this question, *who*, or *what*? with the verb; and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the antecedent to the relative.

The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

^a *Vir sapit*, ^b *qui pauca loquitur*,

The man is wise, *who* speaketh few words.

If the relative refers to two antecedents, or more, then it is put in the plural number; and if they be of different persons, the relative agrees with the antecedent of the more worthy person; as, *Ego et tu qui erāmus dōmi*, I and you who were at home.

Sometimes a sentence supplies the place of the antecedent, and in this case the relative is put in the neuter gender; as, *In tempore vēni, quod rerum omnium est primum*, I came in time, which is the most important thing of all.

When the relative is placed between two substantives, to both of which it refers, it commonly agrees with the latter; as, *Animal quem vocāmus hōminem*, the animal which we call man.

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

SUBSTANTIVES.

I.

*PROPRIA quæ maribus tribuuntur mascula dicas ;
 Ut sunt Divorum, Mars, Bacchus, Apollo ; Virorum,
 Ut Cato, Virgilius ; Fluviorum, ut Tybris, Orontes :
 Mensium, ut October : Ventorum, ut Libs, Nötus, Auster.
 Montium, ut Ossa ; Alpīs tamen est muliebris, et Cæta,
 Cyllênē, Rhödöpe, et cæcis gravis ignibus Ætna,
 Pëlion est neutrum, Söracte, Cëraunia neutra.*

II.

*Propria fæmineum referentia nomina sexum,
 Fæmineo generi tribuuntur ; sive Dearum
 Sunt, ut Jūno, Vënus ; muliebria, ut Anna, Phîlötis ;
 Urbium, ut Elis, Opus ; Regionum, ut Græcia, Persis :
 Insulæ item nomen, ceu Crëta, Britannia, Cýprus.
 Neutrum Düllichium, ventura ut regula monstrat :
 Quasdam etiā excipias urbes, nam mascula Sulmo,
 Et Delphi, et similes ; genus est utrumque Sëlinus,
 Pharsälus, et Märäthon : Quædam neutralia, ut Argos,
 Tuscūlum, item Tibur, luxurque imbelles Tarentum,
 Pergämaque, et quot in a finem pluralia præstant.
 Fæmineum et neutrum Præneste dat, Ilion, Anxur.
 Est neutrum Lätium, mas Bosphörus, adjice Pontus.*

III.

*Fæminei generis gemmarum nomina discas,
 Sapphirus veluti ; ast öpälus mas, atque smäragdus :
 Arborum item cernes muliebria nomina, ut alnus,
 Cüpressus, cedrus ; mas spīnus, mas öleaster.
 Cætera in er neutrale genus plerumque videbis,
 Quale päpäver, äcer ; queis thus atque adjice röbur.
 Adjungunt muliebre mari cýtisusque, rübusque ;
 Intübus in numero plurali habet intüba neutrum.
 Nomina sunt volucrum, ceu passer, hīrundo ; ferarum,*

*Ut felis, vulpes ; et piscium, ut ostrea, cētus,
 Dicta epicæna, quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.
 Multa etiam commune dabunt genus ; ut lēpus, anser,
 Vespertilio, mus, grus, bos, cānis, atque élēphantus :
 Fæmineumque mari jungunt sus, tīgris, et anguis,
 Et serpens, dāmæque, et egentes lumine talpæ.*

DECLENSION I.

*As, es, mascula erunt ; a, e, inflexio prima,
 Fæminei generis, prohibet nisi sensus, habebit.
 Mas Bōreas, sātṛāpes ; muliebris lītēra, Circe ;
 Sed mas scriba genus, sic scurra, athlēta, lānista.*

DECLENSION II.

*Um neutrale, us et er dat mas plerumque secunda.
 Sic regnum neutrum, dōminus mas atque māgister :
 Sed quæ dicta supra sunt, excipienda legenti,
 Pauca dabunt, nam arbor mālus muliebris, et urbis
 Nomen Abȳdus erit, sic alvus, hūmus, cōlus, atque
 Carbasus, et vannus, Sic Nīlo nota phāselus ;
 Pauca etiam occurrent Græcis deducta, pāpȳrus,
 Antīdōtus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, et illa
 Os breve quot claudit, ceu Dēlos, Sestos, et Isthmos.
 Sed vīrus, pēlāgus neutralia, et adjice vulgus,
 Interdum quamvis hoc inter mascula ponas ;
 Non genus est ullum quo non pēnus invenietur.*

DECLENSION III.—MASCULINES.

*Tertia quas voces lectori inflexio reddit,
 Crede mares, si claudit or, os, er, o quoque rectum,
 Vel quas es finit, crescitque quibus genitivus.
 Sic hōnor, atque hēros, crāter, sermoque, tāpesque ;
 At sōror atque uxor muliebria semper, et arbor ;*

*Sed cor, marmor, ādor neutralia semper, et æquor.
 Sic est fæminei generis cos, dosque, sed os seu
 Oris habet sive ossis erit neutrale, chaosque
 Et mēlos, atque alia a linguā deducta Pelasgā.
 Mas tūber est fructus, sed erit muliebris ut arbor ;
 Linter communis ; neutrum ver, verber, et ūber,
 Atque cādāver, ĩter, spinther, quibus adjice tuber.
 Atque per ex finita, notant quot nomina plantas.
 Excipias quoque lector hyperdissyllabon in do,
 Et quot io claudit verbo deducta, libido,
 Formīdoque velut ; sic dictio, lectio ; porro
 Est cāro atque ēcho atque Argo et muliebris ĩmāgo ;
 Cum notat affectum muliebris rite cūpīdo est ;
 Et tamen hoc vates interdum in mascula cogunt.
 Pauca per es finita licet crescentia disces
 Fæminei generis ; merges, mercesque, quiesque,
 Et tēgēs atque sēges ; quādrūpes communis, et āles.*

DECLENSION III.—FEMININES.

*Omne quod exit in as, ĩs, ŷs, aus, x, es quoque, quando
 Non genitivo crescit, erit muliebre ; superque
 Præbet idem genus s liquidā præeunte memento.
 Sic piētas, fraus, atque chlām̃ys, nāvisque, rātisque,
 Pax, rādix, nūbes, et hyemas, mors ; excipe pauca ;
 Mas erit as assis, compostaque ; mas ělēphasque,
 Et quidquid Græcum genitivo habet antis, ut Atlas,
 Atque gigas, ādāmas ; e sensu vas vād̃is est mas ;
 Vas vās̃is neutrum, sic fas neutrale, nefasque.
 Multa quoque is finita videbis mascula ; pulvis,
 Et pollis, cucumis, sanguis, lapis, amnis, et axis,
 Glis, caulis, cassis, cum non crescit genitivo,
 (Cassis enim, venit a quo cassīdis, est muliebre,)
 Collis, fascis, follis, fūnis, pestis, et ensis,
 Ignis, pānis, piscis, postis, et adjice mensis,
 Orbis, sentis, torris, vectis, vermis, et unguis,
 Nātālis ; numero et primo quæ rarius exstant :*

Annāles, rapidisque jūgālībus adde mōlāres.
 Quinetiam cernes communia pauca, cānālis,
 Et scrōbis, et torquis, callis, fīnis, cīnis; etsi 100
 Hæc duo plurali apparent tibi mascula tantum :
 Et, quoniam nunc vir nunc fœmina dicitur, hostis
 Est commune genus, cīvis, testis, pātruelis.
 Est data lex potior cur mas Hālys exit et Othrys.
 Mascula nulla es non crescens dat, ācīnāce dempto ;
 At vātes commune, vēpres etiam, atque pālumbes.
 Quæ Græca ax finit, sūnt plurima mascula, thōrax,
 Et cordax, anthrax; sic ex quæ plurima claudit,
 Qualis āpex, cōdex, cīmex, cortexque, cūlexque,
 Grex, vertex, mūrex, pūlex, caudexque, sīlexque : 110
 Pauca per ix finita, cālix, fornix, īta phœnix ;
 Græcaque in yx, ut ōnyx, et ōryx, bombyxque, cālyxque ;
 Sic quīcunx, septunx, et cætera mascula : porro
 Mascula ādeps, dens, fons, mons, pons, hūdropsque,
 chālybsque ;
 Gryps, torrens, ōriensque, rūdensque, bīdensque, trī-
 densque :
 Mascula ēpopsque mēropsque, et stirps communis
 habetur.

DECLENSION III.—NEUTER.

Quæ claudunt a, e, i, y, c, neutra leguntur,
 l, n, t, ar, ur, us; videas exempla; poēma,
 Et märe, mīsy, sīnāpi, ālec, lac, mel, ānīmalque,
 Carmen, et adde cāput, lāquear, jēcū, adjice tempus :
 Mascula sol, mūgil; sic sal plerumque, sālesque 121
 Plurali semper.—Communīa præsul et exul,
 Atque vīgil; fīdīcen, ren, pecten mascula; et addas
 Deducta a Græcā linguā paucissima, delphin,
 Līchen, et pæan, primāque e lege Cīthæron,
 Sindon, atque īcon muliebria sunt, et Amazon,
 Et numero Alcyones quæ primo rarius exstant :
 Significans socium par mas, mas turtur, et augur,
 Fur, vultur, sic furfur : in us muliebria pauca,

*Ut virtus, incus, tellus, pālus, atque jūventus,
Atque pēcus pēcūdis, pēcōris dans accipe neutrum.* 130

DECLENSION IV.

*U neutrum, ut cornu ; mas us, ceu cursus et actus ;
Porticus atque trībus muliebria, ācusque, dōmusque,
Et mānus, et quercus, sic cum quinquātrībus īdus ;
Sensus ānus, nūrus, et socrus muliebria monstrat.*

DECLENSION V.

*Quinta genus muliebre dat, ut spes ; at numero mas
Plurali tantum, primo commune dies est.*

ADJECTIVES.

*Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia formam,
Ut felix, audax, retinent genus omne sub unā.
Sub geminā si voce cadunt, velut omnis et omne,
Vox commune duum prior est, vox altera neutrum.* 140
*At si tres variant voces, sācer ut, sacra, sacrum,
Vox prima est mas, altera fāemina, tertia neutrum.*

*Sunt quēis plurales casus in a non adhibentur,
Pauper, īnops, pūber, sospes, cum dēgēner, ūber,
Et dīves, lōcūples, mēmōr, immēmōr, atque sūperstes.*

NOUNS HETEROCLITE, OR IRREGULAR.

*Quæ genus aut flexum variant, quæcumque novato
Ritu deficiunt, superantve, Heteroclita sunt.*

*Hæc genus in variis numeris variantia cernis ;
Nam primo maria hæc numero sunt, neutra secundo :
Tartārus horribilis, sic sībīlus, intūbus exstant ;* 150
Plurali jōcus at numero genus addit utrumque,

*Et lōcus ;—hæc primo muliebria, neutra secundo :
 Pergāmos, et lautis exquirenda ostrea cœnis,
 Carbāsus ; hæc primo neutrum, mas altero habebunt,
 Et siser, et cœlum, Junonique Argos amatum :
 Rastrum plurali et frenum genere exstat utroque,
 Quin ĕpŭlum primo, ast ĕpŭlæ plurale leguntur.*

Quæ sequitur manca est casu, numerove propago :

*His neutris nullos poteris tu cernere casus,
 Nī qui sunt, ut scis, tibi semper in hoc genere idem ; 160
 Hippōmānes, căcoēthēs, ĕpos, mēlos, adjice gummi,
 Et fas, māne, nihil, pondo, instar ; grata perenni
 Sub Zephyro Tempe plurali ; tot, quot, et omnes
 A tribus ad centum numeri, quæ aptota vocantur.*

*Sunt quoque rectus abest queis casus nomina multa,
 Aut alii, nullo certo ordine deficientes.
 Ut fors, frūgis, ōpis, dāpis, et vīcis, impētis, et vis,
 Verbēris, et fīdis, atque lues, sordemque, vepremque ;
 Quin ablativo solo sunt pauca videnda,
 Ut sunt compēde, fauce, prēce, atque ambāge ; sed omnia
 Integra plurali numero plerumque leguntur, 171
 Sic jussu, nātu, permissu, sponte, rōgātu,
 Mandātu ; sed et his pluralis deficit, atque
 Occurrent quoque plura suo tibi tempore quæque.*

*Hæc numerum nunquam (prohibet nam sensus) habebunt
 Pluralem ; cœnum, līmus, sic trītīcum, et aurum,
 Argentum, et paria ; his pietas addenda, pūdorque,
 Et sītis, atque fāmes, infantia, firma juvenus,
 Atque sēnecta gravis, vel (vox magis apta) sēnectus,
 Ver, vesper, lētum, spēcīmen, victusque, sŭpellexque,
 Et vīrus, sanguis, plebs, atque ignobile vulgus ; 181
 Cum paucis aliis ; sic nomina propria cuncta.*

NOUNS defective in the Singular Number.

Mascula sunt tantŭm numero contenta secundo,

Mānes, majōres, cancelli, libēri, *et* antes,
 Prīmōres, prōcēres, fasti *simul*, *atque* mīnōres,
 Infēri, *item* Sūpēri, lēmūres, *quibus adde* Pēnātes,
Et loca plurali, quales Gābūique, Lōcrique,
Et quaecunque legas passim similis rationis.

Hæc sunt fæminei generis, numerique secundi ;
 Exūviæ, phālēræ, grātes, *et* ineptiæ, *et* īdus, 190
 Blandītīæ, induciæ ; *simul* insīdiæque, mīnæque,
 Excūbiæ, nōnæ, nūgæ, trīcæque, cālendæ,
 Quisquīliæ, thermæ, cūnæ, dīræ, exēquiæque,
 Fēriæ, *et* infēriæ ; *sic* prīmītīæque, plāgæque,
 Dēliciæ, tēnēbræque, *et* valvæ, dīvītīæque,
 Nuptiæ *item*, *et* lactes : *addantur* Thēbæ *et* Athēnæ ;
Quod genus invenias et nomina plura locorum.

Rariùs hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur ;
 Mœnia, *cum* tesquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,
 Arma, mǎpālia ; *sic* bellāria, mūnia, castra : 200
Funus justa petit, petit et sponsālia virgo ;
Rostra disertus amat, puerique crēpundia gestant,
Infantēsque colunt cūnābūla : consulit exta
Augur, sacra piæ connectunt sarta puellæ.
Festa deum poterunt, ceu Bacchānālia, jungi :
Quòd si plura leges, licet hāc quoque classe reponas.

NOUNS declined after both the second and fourth
 Declensions.

Invenies porro tu nomina pauca secundæ
Quosdam etiam casus lector sumentiu quartæ,
Atque is præcipue, atque e dedignantia fines,
Ut laurus, necnon ficus, dōmus, altaque pinus, 210
Et cōlus, et cornus, vivisque invisa cupressus.

OF THE

PERFECT TENSE, AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

Of the Perfect Tense of simple Verbs.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

*As in præsenti perfectum format in avi,
 Ut no nas nāvi, vōcīto vōcītas vōcītavi ;
 Deme lāvo lāvi, jūvo jūvi ; quin cūbo semper
 Dat cūbui, sēco dat sēcui, mīcui mīco reddit ;
 Sic frīco dat frīcui, dōmo dat dōmui, a sōno semper
 Formatur sōnui, tōnuīque tōno generabit ;
 Adde crēpo tibi quod crēpui, vēto quod vētui dat ;
 Interdum nēcō dat necui, plerumque necavi.
 Sæpius applicui dabit applico, rarius -avi, at
 Supplicō, multiplicō, semper formantur in āvi :
 Quippe dēdi do das, sto stas formare stēti vult.*

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Es in præsenti perfectum format ui dans ;
 Ut nīgreo nīgres nīgrui, mōneo mōnui dat,
 Et geminum fugiens u langueo languī habebit.
 Sed multa ingenuus puer excipiēda videbit :
 Fit veō vi, ut mōveo mōvi, cāveo quoque cāvi ;
 Ferveo item fervi, sed sæpe et fervui habebit.
 Dat fleo fles flēvi, neo nēvi, dēleo format
 Dēlēvi ; exōleo et verbum simile omne dat -evi.
 Compleo complēvi format, rēpleoque rēplēvi.
 Dat cieō cīvi, sed raro preteritum exstat.
 Plurima sunt quorum perfectum desinit in si,
 Ut jūbeo jussi, māneo mansi, ardeo et arsi,
 Mulceo mulsi, suadeo suasi, rīdeo risi :
 Hæreo sic hæsi formabit, torqueo torsi ;
 L vel r ante geo si stet, geo vertitur in si ;
 Urgeo ut ursi, mulgeo mulsi, fulgeo fulsi ;*

*In deo sunt etiam quæ di dent, prandeo prandi,
 Et video, sēdeo, assideo, sic strideo strīdi :
 Quatuor in xi formantur, sic frīgeo frixi,
 Augeo et auxi, lūceo lūgeo habent quoque luxi.
 Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima,
 Pendeo namque pēpendi, mordeo vultque mōmordi,
 Spondeo sponsondi, vult tondeo habere tōtondi.
 Passivi formam solam tria verba sequuntur,
 Gaudeo gāvīsus, sōlītus sōleo, audeo et ausus.
 Perfecto quin pauca carent, ut mœreo monstrat,
 Atque āveo, atque hēbeo, scāteo, vēgeo, immīneoque ;
 Atque aliæ voces, quas usus rite docebit.*

THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Tertia præteritum formabit ut hic manifestum :
 Bo fit psi, scribo ceu scripsi, sed bībo, lambo,
 Et scābo, bi faciunt ; quin occumbo occūbui dat.
 Co fit xi, ut dico dixi, sed parco pēperci,
 Et vinco vīci, vetus īco sic facit ici.
 Sco fit vi, ut pasco pāvi ; attamen inde profectum
 Compesco format compescui ; et adjice disco,
 Quod dīdici semper format, poscoque pōposci.
 Simplicium formam verba inceptiva sequuntur,
 Nam cāleo cālui format, cāluique cālesco.
 Perfectum jactant nullum glisco atque fātisco,
 Cum paucis aliis a nomine rite profectis.
 Do fit si. ut claudio clausi, cēdo geminans s
 Dat cessi ; di pauca dabunt, ut scando, prehendo,
 Accendo, cūdo, mando, dēfendo, ēdo, pando,
 Et strīdo, sīdo ; findo et fundo abjiciunt n,
 Inde fīdi, fūdi ; rarum dat rūdo rūdivi ;
 Quinetiam paucis geminatur syllaba prima,
 Pendo pēpendi, tendo tētendi, cædo cēcīdi,
 Et cādo dat cēcīdi, tundo tūtūdi ; ultima vero
 Plerumque in natis a do geminatur, ut ēdo,
 Abdo, condo -dīdi, reddoque et cætera formant ;
 Abscondo tamen abscondi formare videbīs.*

Passivi formam fīdo sum fīsus habebit.

Go fit xi, ut jungo junxi; sed r ante go vult si,

Ut spargo sparsi; lēgo lēgi, et āgo facit ēgi,

Et frango frēgi; pango pro fīgere panxi,

(Inde tamen composta dabunt semper tibi -pēgi)

Cum cernis pēpigi, est præsens plerumque paciscor.

Dat tango tētigi, pūpūgi dabit ordine pungo,

Sed pungi compōsta; carent perfecto ambigo, vergo.

Guo, ceu restringuo restinxi, xi tibi format.

Ho fit xi, traho quod traxi docet, et veho vexi.

Lo fit ui, cōlo ceu colui; psallo excipe psalli;

Excello legem sequitur, sed percūli habebit

Percello; pēpūli dat pello, fallo fēfelli,

Dat vello velli tibi sēpius, est ubi vulsi.

Mo fit mpsi, cōmo ceu compsi; at ěmo facit ěmi;

Deinde vōmoque frēmoque gēmoque trēmoque sequuntur,

Quæ per ui perfecta dabunt, dabit et prēmo pressi.

No fit vi, sīno ceu sivi, quin ordine cerno

Mutato crēvi; sic sperno; sternoque stravi,

Gigno, pōno, cāno, gēnui, pōsui, cēcīni dant;

Cujus ui compōsta, ut concīno concīnui, dant.

Po fit psi, ut sculpo sculpsi, carpo quoque carpsi;

Sed rumpo semper rūpi, strēpui strēpo format.

Quo fit xi, cōquo ceu coxi, linquo excipe liqui.

Ro fit si, sæpe s geminato, quod gēro monstrat,

Dans gessi; tēro dat trīvi, curroque cūcurri;

Quæro quæsīvi, neque enim fēro prætereatur,

Quod tūli habet; sēro dat sēvi, compōsta sed ejus

Et -sevi et -sēruī dant, insēro, consēro, formā

Mutatā ad sensum, -sēruī sed dēsēro tantum,

Assēro item formant; nullum fūro præteritum dat.

So fit si, ut vīso visi, pinso adjice pinsi,

Pinsui item; depso quoque depsui; at omne dat -esso

-essīvi, ut probat arcesso, incesso, atque lācesso.

To fit ti, ut verto verti; sic ordine verso,

Obstīti ab obsisto fluit, adde insisto, rēsisto;

Dat mitto mīsi, pēto vult formare pētīvi,

Sterto stertui habet, mēto messui: ab -ecto fit -exi,

*Ut flecto flexi ; necto dat nexui, habetque
 Nexi, sic pecto dat pexui, habet quoque pexi.
 Vo fit vi, ut volvo volvi, vīvo excipe vixi.
 Xo xui habet, texo ut monstrat, quod texui habebit.
 Fit cio ci, ut fācio fēci, jācio quoque jēci ;
 Allicio allexi, ēlicio ēlicui tibi format.
 Aspicio aspexi, sic conspicio, inspicioque.
 Fit dio di, ut fōdio fōdi ; gio, ceu fūgio, -gi.
 Fit pio pi, ut cāpio cēpi ; cūpio ecce cūpivi
 Et rāpio rāpui, sāpio sāpui atque sāpivi.
 Dat pārio pēperi ; dat concūtio concussi.
 Denique uo fit ui, ut stātuo stātui ; pluo plūvi
 Format, sive plui ; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.
 Compositum simplex sequitur ; sed syllaba semper
 Quam simplex geminat composito non geminatur.*

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Quarta dat is ivi, ut monstrat scio scis tibi scīvi ;
 Excipias vēnio dans vēni, raucio rausi,
 Haurio item hausī, farcio farsī, fulcio fulsi,
 Sarcio sarsi, sentio sensi, sēpio sepsi,
 Sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi ; tum tria verba
 Formantur per ui ; sālio, apērio, opērioque,
 In ri compērio -rio mutat, repērioque,
 Perfectum præbent fērio atque sūperbio nullum.*

Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *E*.

*Verba hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
 Si componantur, vocalem primam in e mutant :
 Damno, lacto, sācro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fātiscor,
 Cando vetus, capto, jacto, pātior, grādiorque,
 Partio, carpo, pātro, scando, sic farcio, spargo.*

Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *I*.

*Hæc, hābeo, lāteo, sālio, stātuo, cādo, lædo,
 Tango, cāno, plăceo, tēneo, sic cædo cecīdi,
 Quæro, ěgeo, fāteor, tāceo, sāpio, rāpióque,*

*Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant,
Ut rāpio, erīpio ; sed verbi simplicis usum
Hæc duo, complāceo cum perplāceo, benè servant.*

*Composita à verbis calco, salto, a per u mutant ;
Id tibi demonstrant conculco, inculco, rēsulto.*

*Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a :
Id docet, à claudio, occludo, excludo ; à quatioque,
Percutio, excutio ; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata ;
Plaudo au mutat in o, quod displōdo tibi monstrat.*

Compound Verbs which change the Vowel of the Present Tense into *I*, but not the Preterperfect Tense.

*Hæc si componas, āgo, ĕmo, sēdeo, rēgo, frango,
Et cāpio, jācio, lācio, spēcio, prēmo, pango,
Vocalem primam præsentis in i sibi mutant,
Præteriti nunquam ; ceu frango, rēfringo rēfrēgi ;
A cāpio, incīpio incēpi. Sed pauca notentur ;
Namque suum simplex pērāgo sequitur, sātāgōque ;
Atque ab āgo, dēgo dat dēgi, cōgo coēgi ;
A rēgo, sic pergo perrexī ; vult quoque surgo
Surrexi ; mediā præsentis syllabā ademptā.*

*Composita à pango retinent a quatuor ista :
Dēpango, oppango, circumpango, atque rēpango.
Nil variat fācio, nisi præposito præeunte :
Id docet olfācio, cum calfācio, inficiōque.*

*A lēgo nata, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte,
Præsentis servant vocalem ; in i cætera mutant ;
De quibus hæc, intelligo, dīlīgo, neglīgo, tantūm
Præteritum lexi faciunt ; reliqua omnia legi.*

Of the Supines of simple Verbs.

*Nunc ex præterito discas formare supinum.
Perfectum unum in bi, bībītum formare bībi vult.*

*Ci fit ctum, ut vīci victum testatur, et īci
Dans ictum, fēcī factum, jēcī quoque jactum.*

*Dī fit sum, ut vīdī vīsum : quædam geminant s. ;
Ut pandi passum, sēdī sessum, adde scīdī, quod
Dat scissum, atque fīdī fissum, fōdī quoque fossum.*

*Syllaba non ullis geminatur prima supinis ;
 Idque tōtondi dans tonsum docet, atque cecīdi
 Quod cæsum, et cecīdi quod dat casum, atque tētendi
 Quod tensum et tentum, tūtūdi tunsum, atque dēdi quod
 Jure dātum poscit ; sic quot nascuntur ab illo,
 Addīdi ut addītum habet ; morsum vult atque momordi.*

*Gi fit ctum, ut lēgi lectum, pēgi pēpīgique
 Dant pactum, frēgi fractum, tētīgi quoque tactum,
 Egi actum, pūpūgi punctum ; fūgi fūgītum dat.*

*Di fit sum, ut pēpūli pulsum, sic rite fēfelli
 Falsum ; percūli habet perculsum ; neve tūli te
 Aufugiat, semper cui lātum venit in usum.*

*Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum sumunt, velut hic manifestum ;
 Emi emptum, vēni ventum, cēcīni à cāno cantum,
 A cāpio cēpi captum, cōepi quoque cōeptum ;
 A rumpo rūpi ruptum, līqui quoque lictum.*

Ri fit sum, ut verri versum ; pēpēri excipe partum.

*Si fit sum, ut vīsi visum ; quin ss geminato,
 Mīsi formabit missum, fulsi excipe fultum,
 Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi quoque fartum,
 Ussi ustum, gessi gestum ; torsi sibi tortum
 Vindicat ; indulsi sic indultum tibi format.*

*Psi fit ptum, ut scripsi scriptum ; sculpsi quoque
 sculptum.*

*Ti vult sum, ut verti versum, formare ; supinum
 Cum -stīti habet, stātum erit, sed vix reperire valebis.*

*Vi fit tum ; ut flāvi flātum ; pāvi excipe pastum ;
 Dat lāvi lōtum, interdum lautum atque lāvātum,
 Pōtāvi pōtum, vēnīvi a vēneo vēnum ;
 Dat fāvi fautum, cāvi cautum : a sēro sēvi
 Formes rite sātum, sēpēlīvi disce sēpultum,
 Et singultivi singultum semper habebit :
 Solvi a solvo sōlūtum, volvi a volvo vōlūtum.*

*Quod dat ui dat itum, ut dōmui dōmītum : excipe
 quodvis*

*Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in ūtum ;
 Exui ut exūtum : à ruo deme rui ruītum dans :
 Vult sēcui sectum, nēcui nectum, frīcuique
 Frictum, miscui item mistum, dōcui quoque doctum,*

Torruī *habet* tostum, contentum cōtīnuīque ;
Adjice consūlui consultum, ālui altum ālītūmq̄ue ;
 Sic sālui saltum, cōlui occūlui *quoque* cultum ;
 Pinsui *habet* pistum, rāpui raptum, sēruīque
 A sēro *vult* sertum ; *sic* texui *habet quoque* textum.

Censui *habet* censum, messum *quoque* messui *habebit*,
 Nexui *item* nexum, *sic* pexui *habet quoque* pexum.

Xi *fit* ctum, ut vinxi vinctum : *quædam* abjiciunt n ;
 Ut finxi fictum *semper* dabit, *adjice* pinxi
 Dans pictum, strinxi strictum, rinxi *quoque* rictum :
 Xum, flexi, plexi, fixi, *dant* ; et fluo fluxum.

Of the Supines of Compound Verbs.

Compositum ut simplex formatur quodque supinum,
Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utrique.

Composita à tunsum, *demptā* n, tusum : *à* ruītum *fit*,
 I *mediā* *demptā*, rūtum ; et *à* saltum *quoque* sultum ;
 A sero, *quando sātum* format, *composita sītum* dant.

Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, a *per e* mutant ;
 Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, *adjice* fartum.

A nosco *tantūm* duo cognītum et agnītum *habentur*,
Cætera dant nōtum : *nullo est jam* noscītum *in usu.*

Of the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in Or.

Verba in or admittunt ex posteriore supino
Præteritum, verso u per us, et sum consociato
Vel fui ; ut à lectu, lectus sum vel fui. At horum
Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum :
Nam lābor lapsus ; pātior *dat* passus, et *ejus*
Natum perpētior perpassus ; *dat* fāteorque
 Fassus, confīteor confessus ; *dat* grādiorque
 Gressus, *dat* mensus sum mētior, ūtor et ūsus.

Pro texo orditus, *pro incepto* *habet* ordior orsus,
 Nītor nīsus *vel* nixus sum, ulciscor et ultus,
 Irascor *simul* īratus, reor *atque* rātus sum,
 Oblīvīscor *vult* oblītus sum, fruor optat
 Fructus *vel* fruītus : mīsērēri *junge* mīsertus,

*Atque -itus ; a tuor et tueor tūtus tūtusque ;
A loquor adde locūtus, et a sequor adde secūtus.*

*Expērior facit expertus ; formare pāciscor
Gaudet pactus sum, nanciscor nactus, āpiscor,
Quod vetus est verbum, aptus sum ; unde ādīpiscor
ādeptus.*

*Junge quēror questus, prōficiscor jūnge prōfectus,
Expergiscor sum experrectus ; et hēc quoque, commi-
niscor commentus, nascor nātus, mōriórque
Mortuus, atque ōrior, quod prāteritum facit ortus.
Perfecto mēdeor, vescor, liquorque carebunt,
Sic quoque diffiteor, sic ringor, sic rēmīniscor.*

Of Verbs which make the Preterperfect Tense
both in the active and passive Voice.

*Prāteritum activæ et passivæ vocis habent hęc :
Nūbo nupsi nuptaque sum ; plāceo plācui dat
Et plācītus ; libet et libuit libītum ; licet adde,
Quod licuit licītum ; tædet, quod tæduit, et dat
Pertæsum ; adde pūdet, faciens pūduit pūditūmque ;
Atque pīget, tibi quod format pīguit pīgitūmque.*

Verbs which seldom admit a Supine.

*Hęc rarò aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum :
Lambo, mīco micui, rūdo, scābo, parco pēperci,
Dispesco, posco, compesco, atque adjice disco :
Dēgo, ango, sūgo, lingo, ningo, sātāgōque,
Psallo, vōlo, nōlo, mālō, trēmo, strīdeo, strīdo,
Flāveo, liveo, āvet, pāveo, connīveo, fervet :
A nuo compositum, ut renuo : a cādo, ut accīdo ; prāter
Occīdo, quod facit occāsum, rēcīdōque rēcāsum :
Respūo, sic mētuo, luo, frīgeo, calveo, sterto,
Sic etiam tīmeo : sic lūceo, et arceo, cujus
Composita -ercītum habent : sic a gruo, ut ingruo, nata ;
Et quæcunque in ui formantur neutra secundæ :
Excipias ōleo, dōleo, plāceo, tāceōque,
Pāreo, item cāreo, nōceo, jāceo, lāteōque,
Et vāleo, cāleo ; gaudent hęc namque supino.*

SYNTAXIS.

OR, THE

CONSTRUCTION OF GRAMMAR.

CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

Nominativus et Verbum.

1. VERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ : ut,

Ego loquor.

Homines audiunt.

2. Nominativus pronominum omittitur, nisi distinctionis aut emphasis gratiâ : ut,

Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis. *Cic.*

Auditis, an me ludit amabilis

Insania? Audire et videor pios

Errare per lucos. *Hor.*

Possunt quia posse videntur. *Virg.*

3. Aliquando verbum infinitivi modi usurpatur pro nominativo vel pro accusativo casu nominis : ut,

Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes

Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros. *Ovid.*

Quod crimen dicis, præter amâsse, meum? *Ovid.*

4. Cum duo sunt nomina diversarum personarum, verbum cum personâ digniore concordat : * ut,

Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et suavissimus Cicero valemus. *Cic.*

5. Cum duo aut plura nomina singularis numeri unum verbum sequitur, plerumque in plurali ponitur, si

* Apud Latinos prima persona dignissima est, et genus masculinum.

de *animantibus* agitur; si de *rebus*, vel in plurali vel in singulari: ut,

Apud Regillum Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt. *Cic.*

Cum tempus necessitasque postulat, decertandum manu est. *Cic.*

Beneficium et gratia homines inter se conjungunt. *Cic.*

6. Cum nomen singularis numeri multitudinem indicat, verbo plurali sæpe jungitur: ut,

Atria turba tenent, veniunt leve vulgus, euntque. *Ov.*

Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt. *Cæs.*

(a.) Sic et adverbium *partim* cum genitivo plurali nominis, ceu nomen ipsum aliquando usurpatur: ut,

Partim eorum timidi sunt, partim a republicâ aversi. *Cic.*

Partim eorum ficta aperte, partim temere effutita sunt. *Cic.*

7. Verbum inter duos nominativos ejusdem personæ sed diversorum numerorum positum, cum alterutro concordare potest, sed cum posteriore fere concordat: ut,

Amantium iræ amoris integratio est. *Ter.*

Pectus quoque robora fiunt. *Ovid.*

Omnia ponitus erant. *Ovid.*

8. Verba dicendi, audiendi, sciendi, putandi, et similia, et verbum *sum* pro nominativo accusativus sequitur, verbo sequente infinitivo: ut,

Audivit nos venire. *Cic.*

Scribit confectum esse bellum. *Cic.*

Fama est, Enceladum urgeri mole hâc. *Virg.*

(a.) Verba sperandi et promittendi infinitivus modus futuri temporis plerumque sequitur: ut,

Hæc promitto me esse observaturum. *Cic.*

Spero fore ut contingat id nobis. *Cic.*

CONCORDANTIA Secunda.

Substantivum et Adjectivum.

9. Adjectiva, participia, et pronomina, cum substantivo genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut,

Rara avis in terris nigroque simillima cygno. *Juv.*

10. Cum verbum infinitivi modi, aut sententiæ pars pro substantivo usurpatur, neutrius generis habetur: ut,
Humanum est irasci.

11. Cum plura sunt substantiva diversorum generum, adjectivum cum digniore genere concordat, si de *animantibus* agitur, et si in numero plurali ponitur: ut,
Jam pridem pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.

12. Si vero de *rebus* agitur, adjectivum sæpe in neutro genere ponitur: ut,

Secundæ res, honores, imperia, victoriæ, fortuita sunt.
Cic.

(a.) Interdum adjectivum cum proximo substantivo concordat, cujuscunque generis sit, præsertim cum in singulari numero ponitur: ut,

Animus, et consilium, et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus. *Cic.*

13. Adjectivum aliquando concordat cum substantivo quod significatur, non cum eo quod exprimitur: ut,

Thracum auxilia, (*i. e.* Thraces auxiliantes) cum pars, (*i. e.* aliqui ex iis) munitionibus adjacerent, cæsi sunt.
Tac.

14. Aliquando nullum substantivum exprimitur, sed adjectivum pro substantivo usurpatur: ut,

Mira loquor. *Ovid.*

Multi pro patriâ mortem libenter oppetierunt. *Cic.*

CONCORDANTIA Tertia.

Relativum et Antecedens.

15. Relativum cum antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ: ut,

Ego sum ille consul qui Romam servavi.

Contemnimus hominem qui amat mendacia.

16. Quoniam relativum adjectivum est, easdem de genere leges quas adjectivum sequitur: ut,

Eæ fruges atque fructus quos terra gignit. *Cic.*

Duo importuna prodigia (*i. e. viri prodigiosi sceleris*) quos improbitas tribuno plebis constrictos addixerat. *Cic.*

Ubi est illud scelus qui me perdidit? *Ter.*

17. Aliquando sententia aut pars sententiæ ponitur pro antecedente: ut,

In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum. *Ter.*

18. Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, sæpe cum posteriore concordat: ut,

Homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur. *Cic.*

(a.) Relativum sæpe ponitur Latine, ubi in nostro sermone pronomine cum conjunctione utimur: ut,

Hoc si scisses pater, cujus (*i. e. ejus enim, vel tantæ enim*) pietatis es, nemo te antecessisset. *Quint.*

Et tamen in cælo, quæ (*i. e. tanta enim*) jam patientia nostra est,

Spernimur. *Ov.*

Pater tuus si viveret, quâ severitate (*i. e. tantâ enim*) fuit, tu profecto non viveres. *Cic.*

Hoc jussit, quod (*i. e. sed illud*) si fecissem, omnia perdidissem.

19. Aliquando relativum concordat cum primitivo, quod in possessivo subauditur: ut,

Vestrâ, qui cum summâ integritate vixistis, hoc maxime interest. *Cic.*

(a.) Relativum, cum ad nomen multitudinis refertur, aliquando in plurali ponitur: ut,

Cæsar equitatum omnem præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. *Cæs.*

20. Si nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur à verbo aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in sententiâ locatur: ut,

Te peto quem merui. *Ovid.*

Cujus numen adoro.

(a.) Cum relativum superlativo adjungitur, superlativum in eodem sententiæ membro quo relativum ponitur: ut,
Themistocles servum quem fidelissimum habuit ad Xerxem misit. *Corn. Nep.*

NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

SUBSTANTIVA.

21. Duo substantiva rei ejusdem in eodem casu ponuntur: ut,

Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum. *Ovid.*

22. Quum duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur: ut,

Crescit amor nummi quantum ipsa pecunia crescit.
Juv.

23. Adjectivum in neutro genere pro substantivo positum, genitivum postulat: ut,

Hoc ad te literarum dedi. *Cic.*

Ad ultimum inopiæ venerant. *Liv.*

Ferimur per opaca locorum. *Virg.*

24. Ponitur interdum genitivus tantum, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito: ut,

Ventum erat ad Vestæ, (i.e. ad templum Vestæ.) *Hor.*

Hasdrubal Girgonis, (i.e. Girgonis filius.) *Liv.*

25. Substantivum qualitatem denotans, adjuncto adjectivo, in genitivo vel in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Titus facilitatis tantæ fuit, ut nemini quicquam negaret.
Eutr.

Agesilaus staturâ fuit humili et corpore exiguo.

Corn. Nep.

(a.) Substantiva a verbis derivata interdum eosdem casus post se admittunt, quos verba a quibus derivantur exigunt: ut,

Domum reditionis spe sublatâ. *Cæs.*

Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus. *Cic.*

26. *Opus* et *usus* ablativum exigunt: ut,

Auctoritate tuâ nobis opus est. *Cic.*

Pecuniam quâ nihil sibi esset usus ab iis non accepit.
Gell.

(a.) *Opus* autem adjective, pro *necessarius*, aliquando poni videtur: ut,

Dux nobis et auctor opus est. *Cic.*

ADJECTIVA.

Genitivus post Adjectivum.

27. Adjectiva, vel participia pro adjectivis posita, quæ cupidinem, scientiam, memoriam, timorem, diligentiam, participationem, atque iis contraria, significant, cum plurimis aliis quæ qualitatem vel motum aliquem animi denotant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

Pythagoras sapientiæ studiosos appellavit philosophos. *Cic.*

Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia ridet. *Ovid.*

Venturæ memores jam nunc estote senectæ. *Ovid.*

Nescia mens hominum fati sortisque futuræ. *Virg.*

Romani appetentes gloriæ præter cæteras gentes fuerunt. *Cic.*

Serpit humi tutus nimium timidusque procellæ. *Hor.*

Vir omnis officii diligentissimus. *Cic.*

Cæteræ habere domi fortunarum omnium participem possunt. *Cic.*

Sæpe potens voti redit anus. *Ovid.*

(a.) Ex his *particeps* interdum dativo personæ jungitur: ut, Mater in plerisque ruris operibus marito particeps. *Quint.*

(b.) *Conscius* genitivum rei, dativum personæ, postulat; interdum etiam dativo rei jungitur, personâ subauditâ: ut, Conscius sibi tanti sceleris. *Sall.*

Huic facinori tanto (i.e. illi quæ hoc facinus admiseric) mens tua conscia esse non debuit. *Cic.*

28. Adjectiva quæ copiam egestatemve significant, genitivum, interdum etiam ablativum, exigunt: ut,

Dives equûm, dives pictai vestis et auri. *Virg.*

Dives agris, dives positis in scœnore nummis. *Hor.*

Opis non indiga nostræ. *Virg.*

Plena errorum sunt omnia. *Cic.*

Utriusque harum rerum humanus animus est expers.
Cic.

29. Adjectiva quæ liberalitatem vel contrarium significant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

Liberalis pecuniæ. *Sall.*

Veteris non parvus aceti. *Hor.*

30. *Proprius, superstes, communis*, cum paucis aliis, genitivum, interdum etiam dativum, admittunt: ut,

Populi Romani propria est libertas.

Aliorum superstites sumus. *Tac.*

Hoc commune est potentiæ cupidorum cum otiosis.
Cic.

Omni ætati mors est communis

Pomponius Tiberio superstes fuit. *Tac.*

(a.) *Communis* vero pronomini personali nunquam nisi in dativo jungitur: ut,

Hoc mihi tecum commune est.

31. *A alienus* genitivo, vel dativo, vel ablativo, vel ablativo cum præpositione, jungitur: ut,

Hoc alienum esse suæ dignitatis censet. *Cic.*

A alienus ambitioni. *Sen.*

Fraus homine alienissima est. *Cic.*

Non alienus a Scævolæ studiis. *Cic.*

32. Adjectiva quæ crimen vel contrarium significant, genitivo junguntur: ut,

Regulus collegam, ut noxium conjurationis, ad disquisitionem trahebat. *Tac.*

Integer vitæ, scelerisque purus. *Hor.*

33. Adjectiva verbalia in *ax* genitivum exigunt: ut,
Tempus edax rerum.

34. Adjectiva partitiva, numeralia, comparativa et superlativa, et adjectiva partitive posita, genitivum exigunt: ut,

Utrum horum mavis accipe.

Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romulus.

Manuum fortior est dextra.

Digitorum medius est longissimus.

Sequimur te, sancte Deorum. *Virg.*

(a.) Usurpantur et cum his præpositionibus, *de, ex, in, inter* : ut,

Nam Deus e vobis alter es, alter eris. *Ovid.*

Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit. *Cic.*

Solus de superis qui tua terga vides. *Ovid.*

Inter mille rates tua sit millesima puppis. *Ovid.*

Dativus post Adjectivum.

35. Adjectiva, quibus commodum, similitudo, aut iis similia vel contraria, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant : ut,

Si facis ut patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris. *Juv.*

Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti. *Mart.*

Patri similis. *Cic.*

Virtus fructuosa aliis, ipsi laboriosa. *Cic.*

Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo. *Ovid.*

Socrates iudicibus non supplex fuit. *Cic.*

Dîs carus ipsis. *Hor.*

Est finitimus oratori poeta.

(a.) Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem significant, et adjectivum *affinis*, etiam genitivo junguntur : ut,

Qui mortem leviolem faciunt, somni simillimam volunt esse. *Cic.*

Affinis hujus culpæ. *Cic.*

36. *Natus, habilis, commodus, utilis, aptus*, cum quibusdam aliis, etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur : ut,

Natus ad gloriam. *Cic.*

Utilis ad eam rem.

37. Adjectiva verbalia in *bilis* dativum postulant : ut,

Nulli penetrabilis astro

Lucus iners. *Stat.*

38. Participia passivæ vocis dativum vel ablativum cum præpositione postulant : ut,
 Primâ dicte mihi, summâ dicende Camæna,
 Mæcenas. *Hor.*
 Senex sapiens ab Apolline dictus.

Accusativus post Adjectivum.

39. Adjectiva magnitudinem significantia, accusativum exigunt : ut,
 Fossa undecim pedes lata. *Cic.*

40. *Natus*, cum ad temporis durationem refertur, accusativum exigit : ut,
 Undeviginti annos natus. *Cic.*

41. Accusativus a poetis sæpe subjicitur adjectivis et participiis passivæ vocis, præsertim cum pars affecta indicatur : ut,

Os humerosque Deo similis. *Virg.*

Flores inscripti nomina regum. *Virg.*

Stratus nunc viridi membra sub arbuto. *Hor.*

42. Accusativus sæpe in exclamationibus usurpatur, interjectione aliquâ, a quâ reverà regitur, subauditâ : ut,
 Me cæcum (i. e. O me cæcum) qui hæc ante non viderim ! *Cic.* [*Vide infra, reg. 155.*]

Ablativus post Adjectivum.

43. Adjectiva regunt ablativum significantem causam, aut formam, aut modum rei : ut,

Scelere par est illi, industriâ inferior. *Cic.*

Trojanus origine Cæsar. *Virg.*

44. *Dignus, indignus, præditus, contentus, extorris, fretus*, cum adjectivis pretium significantibus, ablativum exigunt : ut,

Dignus es odio. *Ter.*

Mens est prædita motu sempiterno. *Cic.*

Sorte tuâ contentus abi.

Extorris agro Romano. *Sall.*

Otium gemmis venale nec auro.

Quod non opus est, asse carum est. *Sen.*

(a.) Horum nonnulla poetice interdum genitivum admittunt: ut,

Magnorum indignus avorum. *Virg.*

(b.) *Fretus* interdum, sed raro, dativo jungitur: ut,

Multitudo hostium nulli rei præterquam numero freta fuit. *Liv.*

45. *Natus, satus, cretus, ortus, editus*, ablativum exigunt, et sæpe cum præpositione: ut,

Nate Deâ. *Virg.*

Sate sanguine Divûm. *Virg.*

Hortamur fari quo sanguine cretus. *Virg.*

Venus orta mari mare præstat eunti. *Ovid.*

Te contenta marito,

Edita de magno flumine nympha fui. *Ovid.*

46. Comparativis subjicitur ablativus rei ad quam comparatio fiat, vel utraque res comparata in eodem casu ponitur, interpositâ conjunctione *quam*: ut,

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum. *Hor.*

Melior tutiorque est certa pax, quam sperata victoria. *Liv.*

(a.) Cum duo adjectiva vel adverbia inter se comparantur, et per *quam* conjunguntur, in comparativo ambo fere ponuntur: ut,

Publii Æmilii concio fuit verior quam gratior populo. *Liv.*

Non timeo ne libentius hæc in illum evomere videar quam verius. *Cic.*

(b.) Post *minus, plus, amplius, et longius, quam* interdum omittitur, nihilominus substantivum quod sequitur non in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Si vos minus hodie decem plebis tribunos feceritis. *Liv.*

Cum plus annum æger fuisset. *Liv.*

Dixit Gallorum copias non longius millia passuum octo ab hybernis suis abfuisse. *Cæs.*

(c.) Aliquando subjiciuntur comparativis *quam pro cum* substantivo, *quam qui* vel *quam ut* cum verbo: ut,

Prælium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editur. *Liv.*

Major sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere. *Ovid.*
Flumen latius erat quam ut tranare possent.

PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

47. *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, genitivi primitivorum ponuntur cum persona significatur: ut,
Languet desiderio tui.
Parsque tui lateat corpore clausa meo. *Ov.*
Imago nostri.

48. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, ponuntur cum actio vel possessio rei significatur: ut,
Favet desiderio tuo.
Imago nostra, (i. e. quam nos possidemus.)

49. Pronomina possessiva hos genitivos post se interdum recipiunt, *ipsius, solius, unius, omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, et genitivos participiorum qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,

Dixi meâ unius operâ rempublicam esse salvam. *Cic.*
Cum mea nemo

Scripta legat, vulgo recitare timentis. *Hor.*
De tuo ipsius studio conjecturam ceperis. *Cic.*
In suâ cujusque laude præstantior.
Nostrâ omnium memoriâ.
Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus. *Cic.*

50. *Sui et suus* reciproca sunt, id est, semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiâ præcessit: ut,
Sentit animus se vi suâ non alienâ moveri. *Cic.*
Oravit me pater, ut ad se venirem. *Cic.*

51. Hæc demonstrativa, *hic, iste, ille, is*, fere sic distinguuntur; *hic* mihi proximum demonstrat; *iste* eum qui apud te est; *ille* eum qui ab utroque remotus est; *is* eum de quo mentio fit.

52. Quum *hic* et *ille* ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius, refertur: ut,

Cæsar munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato : Ille mansuetudine clarus factus ; huic severitas dignitatem addiderat. *Sall.*

(a.) Nonnunquam vero *hic* et *ille* mutatas vices habent : ut, Melior tutiorque est certa pax quam sperata victoria ; hæc in tuâ, illa in Deorum potestate est. *Liv.*

53. *Idem* copulativam vim sæpe habet : ut, Nil liberale est quod non idem justum. *Cic.*

Operam in res obscuras conferunt, easdemque non necessarias. *Cic.*

VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

54. Verba substantiva, ut *sum, fio, existo* ; verba vocandi passiva, ut *nominor, appellor, dicor, vocor*, et iis similia, ut *videor, habeor, existimor*, utrinque eisdem casus habent : ut,

Deus est summum bonum.

Natura beatis

Omnibus esse dedit.

Ex nitido fit rusticus. *Hor.*

Opiferque per orbem

Dicor. *Ovid.*

Da mihi fallere, da justo sanctoque videri. *Hor.*

(a.) Item omnia fere verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum nominativo verbi casu, genere, et numero concordat : ut,

Pii orant taciti.

Malus pastor dormit supinus.

Genitivus post Verbum.

55. *Sum* et *fio* genitivum postulant, quoties significant possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet : ut,

Adolescentis est majores natu revereri. *Cic.*

Thebæ populi Romani belli jure factæ sunt. *Liv.*

56. Verba accusandi, damnandi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum criminis vel poenae exigunt, accusativum personae: ut,

Alterum ambitus accusat. *Cic.*

Proditionis eum insimulabant. *Cæs.*

Octupli damnatus est. *Cic.*

57. Vertitur hic genitivus aliquando in ablativum, interdum (cum de crimine agitur) cum præpositione *de*: ut,

Si in me iniquus es iudex, condemnabo eodem ego te crimine. *Cic.*

Non ob eam rem capite damnarer. *Cic.*

Licinium de aleâ condemnatum restituit. *Cic.*

(a.) *Uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo*, et adjectiva superlativa non nisi in ablativo hujusmodi verbis junguntur: ut,

Accusas furti, an stupri? *Utroque.*

De plurimis simul accusaris.

58. Verba miserendi genitivum postulant, præter *miseror*, qui soli accusativo jungitur: ut,

Oro miserere laborum

Tantium, miserere animi non digna ferentis. *Virg.*

O sola infandos Trojæ miserata labores. *Virg.*

59. Verba reminiscendi et obliviscendi genitivum vel accusativum admittunt: ut,

Proprium est stultitiæ aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum. *Cic.*

Nec veterum memini lætorve malorum. *Virg.*

Flagitiorum suorum recordabitur. *Cic.*

Tu, C. Cæsar, oblivisci nihil soles nisi injurias. *Cic.*

Hæc olim meminisse juvabit. *Virg.*

Si rite audita recordor. *Virg.*

60. Verba admonendi genitivum rei exigunt, accusativum personae; interdum ablativum rei cum præpositione *de*; interdum geminum accusativum: ut,

Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suæ. *Sall.*

Putavi eâ de re te esse admonendum. *Cic.*

Unoquoque gradu de avaritiâ tuâ commonemur.
Cic.

Illud me præclare admones. *Cic.*

61. *Potior* genitivo aut ablativo jungitur : ut,
Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt. *Sall.*
Egressi optatâ potiuntur Troes arenâ. *Virg.*

Dativus post Verbum.

62. Omnia fere verba regunt dativum ejus rei, cujus causâ aliquid fit, aut in quam actio refertur : ut,

Sic nullum vobis tempus abibit iners. *Ovid.*

Laomedonti magna facta est injuria. *Cic.*

Pisistratus sibi non patriæ Megarenses vicit. *Cic.*

Hoc omnibus patet. *Cic.*

Quid voveat dulci nutricula majus alumno? *Juv.*

Appius mihi blanditur. *Cic.*

Civitas Romana parum olim vacabat liberalibus studiis. *Cic.*

Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.
Virg.

Consulite vobis, prospicite patriæ. *Cic.*

Medici timent ægris vini noxam. *Plin.*

(a.) Sed *delecto, juvo, lædo*, accusativum exigunt : ut,
Non omnes arbusta juvant. *Virg.*

63. Verba comparandi regunt dativum; interdum etiam accusativum vel ablativum, cum præpositionibus *inter* vel *cum* : ut,

Sic parvis componere magna solebam. *Virg.*

Hominem cum homine, rem cum re comparete. *Cic.*

Partes honestatis inter se comparemus. *Cic.*

64. Verba danda, reddendi, et contraria, regunt dativum : ut,

Fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli. *Mart.*

Quis te mihi casus ademit? *Ovid.*

Æs alienum mihi numeravit. *Cic.*

65. Verba appropinquandi, adjungendi, et iis contraria, dativum exigunt: ut,

Nescit equo rudis hærere ingenuus puer. *Hor.*

Forti miscebat mella Falerno. *Hor.*

Currui jungit equos. *Virg.*

Paulum sepultæ distat inertiae

Celata virtus: eripe te moræ. *Hor.*

(a.) Quædam ex his composita cum præpositione *ad* accusativum cum *ad* admittunt; et interdum verba amovendi et distandi ablativum cum præpositione, vel (apud poetas) sine præpositione, admittunt: ut,

Hi ad summam aquam appropinquant. *Cic.*

Seston Abydenâ separat urbe fretum. *Ovid.*

A malis igitur mors nos abducit, non a bonis. *Cic.*

Quantum distet ab Inacho Codrus narras. *Hor.*

66. Verba imperandi, et contraria, et verba dicendi, regunt dativum: ut,

Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique. *Hor.*

Dic mihi, quid feci? *Ovid.*

67. Verba irascendi regunt dativum: Verba condonandi dativum personæ, accusativum culpæ, si ambo exprimuntur; si alterum tantum, dativum: Verba minandi dativum personæ, accusativum rei: ut,

Adolescenti nihil est quod succenseam. *Ter.*

Homines omnia sibi ignoscunt. *Sall.*

Utrique mortem est minitatus. *Cic.*

Quæ tibi promitto me sanctissime esse observaturum.

Cic.

Tempore paret equus lentis animosus habenis. *Ovid.*

Omnibus ejus dictis repugnavi.

(a.) Excipe *rego*, *guberno jubeo*, quæ accusativum; *tempero* et *moderor*, quæ vel dativum vel accusativum admittunt: ut,

Fortem hoc animum tolerare jubebo.

Ille regit dictis animos. *Virg.*

Te hortor, ut omnia gubernes prudentiâ tuâ. *Cic.*

Sit censor qui viros doceat moderari uxoribus. *Cic.*

Non voluptati sed officio consilia moderari decet. *Cic.*

Æolus ventorum temperat iras. Virg.

Vix temperavere animis. Liv.

68. Verba fidendi et iis contraria dativum exigunt : ut, *Vacuis committere venis nil nisi lene decet. Hor.*

Diffidit perpetuitati bonorum suorum. Cic.

(a.) Interdum vero verba fidendi ablativo junguntur : ut, *Fortunæ stabilitate confidit. Cic.*

70. Dativum ferme regunt verba composita cum his adverbis, *bene, male, satis* ; et cum his præpositionibus, *ad, ante, circum, cum, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super, dis, re* : ut,

Dii tibi benefaciant. Ter.

Concionanti circumfundebatur multitudo. Liv.

Judices sibi constare, et superioribus convenire iudicii debuerant. Cic.

Campus interjacens Tiberi et mœnibus Romanis. Liv.

Omnibus ejus consiliis obstiti. Cic.

Vos est postponere natis

Ausa suis. Ovid.

Brutum copiis præfecit. Cic.

Ora ipsa oculis proponite. Cic.

Magnitudine animi potest repugnari fortunæ. Cic.

Superfuit patri. Liv.

(a.) Nonnulla tamen his accusativum interdum regunt : ut, *Præstat ingenio alius alium. Quint.*

Beatum est post mortem convenire eos, qui juste et cum fide vixerint. Cic.

71. Passivis verbis subjicitur interdum dativus agentis, interdum ablativus cum præpositione, (*Vid. Reg. 78*) : ut,

Hoc in laboribus viventi non intelligitur. Cic.

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis. Hor.

72. *Sum*, cum multis aliis, *geminum* admittit dativum, alterum personæ, alterum rei : ut,

Exitio est avidis mare nautis. Hor.

Quinque cohortes castris præsidio reliquit. Cæs.

Hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt. Cæs.

Accusativus post Verbum.

73. Verba transitiva exigunt accusativum: ut,
Arma virumque cano. *Virg.*

Mortem non deprecor, inquit. *Virg.*

74. Verba neutralia sæpe accusativum cognatæ significationis post se habent: ut,

Duram servit servitutem.

Nec vox hominem sonat; O Dea, certe. *Virg.*

(a.) Verba neutralia aliquando etiam accusativum regunt ejus rei, quæ causam significat: ut,

Id tibi succenseo. *Cic.*

75. Verba rogandi, docendi, celandi, cogendi, sæpe duplicem regunt accusativum: ut,

Tu modo posce Deos veniam. *Virg.*

Ea ne me celet consuefecit filium. *Ter.*

Quid nunc te, asine, literas doceam? *Cic.*

Quid non mortalia pectora cogis

Auri sacra fames? *Virg.*

(a.) Sæpe etiam verba docendi per ellipsin ablativum admittunt: ut,

Socratem fidibus docuit nobilissimus fidicen (i. e. fidibus ludere.) *Cic.*

76. Quædam etiam verba motûs cum præpositionibus *ad*, *trans*, *circum*, *præter*, composita duplicem regunt accusativum, quorum alter ad præpositionem refertur: ut,

Iberum copias trajecit. *Liv.*

Idem jusjurandum adigit Afranium. *Cæs.*

77. Verba quæ activâ voce duplicem regunt accusativum, et verba vestiendi, etiam in passivâ voce accusativum post se habent: ut,

Posceris exta bovis.

Belgæ Rhenum transducuntur. *Cæs.*

Induiturque aures lentè gradientis aselli. *Ovid.*

Ablativus post Verbum.

78. Quodvis verbum admittit ablativum, significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis: ut,

Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis. *Virg.*
 Miltiades summâ æquitate res Chersonesi constituit,
Corn. Nep.

Victoriâ suâ gloriantur. *Cæs.*

Lacte vivunt. *Cæs.*

Lepore omnibus præstitit. *Cic.*

Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere, nos oportet. *Cic.*

Frumentum flumine Arari navibus subvexerat. *Cæs.*

79. Cum nomen agentis sequitur verbum, in ablativo cum præpositione ponitur (*Vid. Reg. 71.*): ut,
 Pompeius a Cæsare victus est.

80. Verbis emendi, vendendi, æstimandi, plerumque subjicitur ablativus pretii: ut,

Multo sanguine Pœnis victoria stetit. *Liv.*

Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit.

Plin.

(a.) Interdum subjicitur genitivus, voce *pretiosus* subauditâ: ut,
 Nequicquam iis pensi est quid faciant. *Liv.*

Judices rempublicam flocci non faciunt. *Cic.*

(b.) *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, plurimi*, cum paucis similibus, post hæc verba sæpe usurpantur: ut,

Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris. *Cic.*

Hephæstionem Alexander plurimi fecerat.

81. Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his contraria, ablativo junguntur: ut,

Amore abundas Antipho. *Ter.*

Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit. *Sall.*

Te quibus mendaciis homines levissimi onerârunt. *Cic.*

Vela queror reditu, verba carere fide. *Ov.*

Pane egeo. *Hor.*

(a.) Sæpe etiam verba egendi et implendi genitivum admittunt: ut,

Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinæ. *Virg.*

Non tam artis indigent quam laboris. *Cic.*

82. Verba abstinendi atque arcendi regunt ablativum, interdum cum præpositione, quæ quidem ante *personam* semper usurpatur: ut,

L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit. *Cic.*

Te a quartanâ liberatum gaudeo. *Cic.*

Apud veteres Romanos quemcunque mortalium arcere tecto nefas habebatur. *Tac.*

Tu Jupiter hunc a tuis aris, a tectis urbis arcebis. *Cic.*

(a.) Apud poetas (ad usum Græcorum) verba abstinendi aliquando genitivum admittunt : ut,

Abstineto

Dixit irarum calidæque rixæ. *Hor.*

Desine mollium

Tandem querelarum. *Hor.*

83. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, supersedeo*, ablativo junguntur : ut,

Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiæ fungatur officiis. *Cic.*

Hannibal cum victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit. *Flor.*

Quid puer Ascanius, superatne et vescitur aurâ. *Virg.*

Haud equidem tali me dignor honore. *Virg.*

Diruit, ædificat, mutat quadrata rotundis. *Hor.*

Verborum multitudine supersedendum est. *Cic.*

84. *Pascor* et *nitor* ablativo, vel sine præpositione, vel cum præpositione, junguntur : ut,

Floribus et victu pascuntur simplicis herbæ. *Virg.*

Pascitur in vivis Livor. *Ov.*

Purâ juvenis qui nititur hastâ. *Virg.*

In vitâ Pompeii nitebatur salus civitatis. *Cic.*

85. Ablativus absolutus dicitur quoties substantivum in ablativo cum participio construitur, vel adjectivo, (interdum etiam cum alio substantivo,) ut tempus vel modum, vel aliam rem comitantem, denotet : ut,

Archilochus regnante Romulo floruit. *Cic.*

Nihil de hac re agi potest salvis legibus. *Cic.*

Exposito quid iniquitas loci posset. *Cæs.*

Me duce tutus eris. *Ov.*

86. Verbis quibusdam additur ablativus partis affectæ, et poeticè accusativus : ut,

Micat auribus et tremit artus. *Virg.*

(a.) Quædam usurpantur, (ad usum Græcorum, sed rarissime) etiam cum genitivo : ut,

Absurdè facis qui angas te animi. *Plaut.*

87. *Exsulo* ablativum regit, *veneo* ablativum cum præpositione, *vapulo* ablativum, vel sine præpositione, vel cum præpositione, admittit : ut,

Mente tamen, quæ sola loco non exulat utar. *Ov.*

Respondit se malle a cive spoliari, quam ab hoste venire. *Quint.*

Testis rogatus est an ab reo fustibus vapulâset. *Quint.*
Omnium sermonibus se sentiet vapulare. *Cic.*

VERBA INFINITA.

88. Verbis quibusdam, et participiis et adjectivis, adduntur verba infinita : ut,

Dicere quæ puduit scribere jussit amor. *Ov.*

Jussus confundere fœdus. *Virg.*

Erat tum dignus amari. *Virg.*

89. Verba rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, et contraria, raro (nisi apud poetas) infinitivum post se habent, plerumque vero conjunctionem cum subjunctivo, (*Vid. Reg. 134*) : ut,

Illud te oro et hortor, ut in munere tuo diligentissimus sis. *Cic.*

Moneo obtestorque, ne hos, qui tibi genere propinqui sunt, negligas. *Cic.*

Themistocles persuasit populo ut classis ædificaretur. *Corn. Nep.*

(a.) Ex his vero *jubeo* et *veto* etiam in pedestri sermone infinitivo sæpius junguntur : ut,

Hannibal Tarentinos sine armis convocari jussit. *Liv.*

90. Verba efficiendi conjunctio cum subjunctivo semper sequitur : ut,

Tu, quicquid indagâris de republicâ, facito ut sciam. *Cic.*

91. Verba accidendi et similia conjunctio cum subjunctivo plerumque sequitur: ut,

Persæpe evenit ut utilitas cum honestate certet. *Cic.*
Amicis quoniam satisfeci, reliquum est ut ego met
mihi consulam. *Corn. Nep.*

(a.) Sed *contingit* infinitivus sæpe sequitur: ut,
Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum. *Hor.*

92. Verba permittendi, optandi, cogendi, vel infinitivum vel *ut* cum subjunctivo admittant (*Vid. Reg. 134*):
ut,

Phaethon optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur. *Cic.*
Natura non patitur ut aliorum spoliis nostras opes
augeamus. *Cic.*

Permites ipsis expendere numinibus, quid
Conveniat nobis. *Juv.*

93. *Oportet* et *necesse est* interdum infinitivum, sæpius
subjunctivum, post se habent: ut,

Valeat possessor oportet. *Hor.*

Tanquam ita fieri non solum oporteret, sed etiam
necesse esset. *Cic.*

Corpus mortale intereat necesse est.

94. Post verba orandi, imperandi, vel volendi, *ut* sæpe
omittitur, verbum tamen in subjunctivo ponitur: ut,

Te pro amore nostro rogo atque oro, te colligas virum-
que præbeas. *Cic.*

Postero die rex edixit omnes armati coirent. *Curt.*

Vellem Dii immortales fecissent ut vivo Ser. Sulpicio
gratias ageremus. *Cic.*

Malo te sapiens hostis metuat, quam stulti cives
laudent. *Liv.*

(a.) Sic post *cave* sæpe omittitur *ne*: ut,

Cave existimes me abjecisse curam reipublicæ. *Cic.*

95. Ponuntur interdum sola per ellipsin verba infi-
nita: ut,

Hinc spargere voces

In vulgum ambiguas, et quærere conscius arma. *Virg.*
(*Subauditur* incipiebat.)

GERUNDIA.

96. Gerundia in *di* eandem cum genitivis constructionem habent, et pendent a substantivis vel ab adjectivis, nunquam a verbis : ut,

Cecropias innatus apes amor urget habendi. *Virg.*

Æneas celsâ in puppi jam certus eundi. *Virg.*

97. Gerundia in *do* eandem cum dativis et ablativis constructionem habent : ut,

Illud ediscendo scribendoque commune est. *Quinct.*

Alitur vitium vivitque tegendo. *Virg.*

(a.) Præpositio *sine* nunquam cum gerundiis in *do* usurpatur. (*Vid. Reg. 133.*)

98. Gerundia in *dum* eandem cum accusativis constructionem habent, sed præpositionem præcedentem semper exigunt : ut,

Locus ad agendum amplissimus. . *Cic.*

Mores puerorum se inter ludendum simplicius detegunt. *Quinct.*

99. Si verbum accusativum regit, gerundivum sæpius usurpatur quam gerundium : ut,

Timotheus peritus fuit civitatis regendæ. *Corn. Nep.*

Ad accusandos homines duci præmio, proximum latrocinio est.

(a.) Usurpantur eodem modo *utor, fruor, fungor, potior* : ut, Justitiæ fruendæ causâ videntur olim bene morati reges constituti. *Cic.*

Omnia bona ei utenda tradiderat. *Cic.*

100. Gerundivum in nominativo (et in accusativo, cum verbum infinitivi modi adjungitur, vel subauditur) necessitatem, vel officium, vel possibilitatem indicat : ut,

Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. *Juv.*

Diligentia præcipue colenda est nobis, et semper adhibenda. *Cic.*

Eos a se observandos et colendos putabat. *Cic.*

SUPINA.

101. Supinum in *um* activam significationem habet, et sequitur verbum significans motum ad locum : ut,

Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ. *Ov.*

102. Supinum in *u* passivam significationem habet, et sequitur adjectiva : ut,

Quod factu fœdum est, idem est et dictu turpe.

VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

103. Verba quæ nominativum non habent, neque ultra tertiam personam singularem et infinitivum inflectuntur, impersonalia dicuntur : ut,

Hinc tonat, hinc missis abrumpitur ignibus æther.
Ovid.

104. Hæc impersonalia *interest* et *refert* quibuslibet genitivis junguntur ; et his ablativis, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ* : ut,

Interest magistratûs tueri bonos.

Tuâ refert teipsum nôsse.

(*a.*) Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, minoris*, et similia : ut,

Tanti refert honesta agere.

105. Verba impersonalia casus pro sensu regunt, more aliorum verborum : ut,

Oratorem irasci minimè decet. *Cic.*

Licuit Themistocli esse otioso. *Cic.*

106. His verbis *attinet*, *pertinet*, *spectat*, proprie additur præpositio *ad* : ut,

Me vis dicere quod ad te attinet? *Ter.*

107. *Decet*, *attinet*, et *spectat*, quamvis impersonalia dicuntur, nominativum sæpe habent, et in tertiâ personâ plurali sæpe inveniuntur : ut,

Candida pax homines trux decet ira feras. *Ovid.*

Quæ nihil attinent. *Ter.*

Ea non ad religionem spectant. *Cic.*

108. His impersonalibus, *pœnitent, tædet, miseret, pudet, piget*, subjicitur accusativus personæ, cum genitivo rei: ut,

Malo me fortunæ pœniteat quam victoriæ pudeat.
Curt.

Me non solum piget stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.

Eorum nos miseret. *Cic.*

Si non pertæsum thalami tædæque fuisset. *Virg.*

(a.) Interdum res exprimitur, vel verbo infinitivi modi, vel conjunctione *quod* et verbo: ut,

Non me pudet fateri nescire quod nesciam. *Cic.*

Pœnitet me quod te offendi. *Cic.*

109. Pleraque passiva verba in impersonalia verti possunt in tertiâ personâ singulari, et dativum agentis vel ablativum cum præpositione post se admittunt (qui vero sæpius subauditur,) eum vero casum objecti quem verbum activum regit: ut,

Quo ruitis, generosa domus? Male creditur hosti.
Orid.

In alium quendam locum ex his locis morte migratur.
Cic.

DE TEMPORE.

110. Quæ significant partem temporis, in ablativo ponuntur: ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit. *Plin.*

111. Quæ durationem temporis significant, in accusativo ponuntur: ut,

Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos. *Virg.*

(a.) Interdum cum ætas hominis significatur, genitivus usurpatur: ut,

Hamilcar secum in Hispaniam duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem. *Corn. Nep.*

(b.) Interdum, sed perraro, duratio temporis per ablativum significatur: ut,

Triginta annis vixit Panætius, posteaquam libros de officiis ediderat. *Cic.*

SPATIUM LOCI.

112. Spatium loci in accusativo ponitur, cum motus significatur; in ablativo, cum statio: ut,

Jam mille passus processerat. *Liv.*

Millibus passuum sex a Cæsaris castris consedit. *Cæs.*

(a.) Interdum vero accusativus usurpatur etiam cum statio significatur: ut,

Mille ferè et quingentos passus castra ab urbe locat. *Liv.*

Dicimus etiam abest bidui, ubi subauditur itinere, vel iter.

NOMINA LOCORUM.

113. Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis in quo fit actio, modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis et singularis numeri sit: ut,

Quid Romæ faciam? *Juv.*

(a.) Hi genitivi, *domi, humi, militiæ, belli*, nominum priorum sequuntur formam: ut,

Præterea, quibuscunque rebus vel belli vel domi poterunt, rempublicam augeant. *Cic.*

Procumbit humi bos. *Virg.*

Una semper militiæ et domi fuimus. *Ter.*

114. Verum si oppidi nomen pluralis numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Colchus an Assyrius, Thebis nutritus an Argis. *Hor.*

Romæ Tibur amo ventosus, Tibure Romam. *Hor.*

115. Verbis significantibus motum *ad locum* additur nomen oppidi vel insulæ in accusativo sine præpositione: ut,

Atque aliquis doctas jam nunc eat, inquit, Athenas. *Ovid:*

(a.) Hanc constructionem sequuntur *domus* et *rus*: ut,

Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ. *Virg.*

Ego rus ibo.

116. Verbis significantibus motum *a loco* additur nomen oppidi vel insulæ in ablativo sine præpositione:

Nisi ante Româ profectus esses, nunc eam relinques:

Ovid:

(a.) *Perraro* post verba motûs præpositiones ante nomina urbium inveniuntur : ut,

Adolescentulus miles profectus sum ad Capuam. *Cic.*
Segesta ab Æneâ fugiente a Trojâ condita est. *Cic.*

(b.) Interdum etiam regionum nomina post verba motûs in accusativo vel ablativo pro sensu ponuntur, sine præpositione : ut,

Germanicus Ægyptum proficiscitur. *Tac.*
Dein Piso abire Syriâ statuit. *Tac.*

(c.) Apud poetas quodvis substantivum quod verbum motûs ad locum sequitur, in accusativo interdum ponitur : ut,
Speluncam Dido dux et Trojanus eandem
Deveniunt. *Virg.*

Verba refert aures non pervenientia nostras. *Ovid.*

ADVERBIA.

117. ADVERBIA loci, *ubi, ubique, ubicunque, usquam, nusquam, huc, eo, quo*, et cætera, interdum genitivos *terrarum, gentium, loci, locorum*, et, cum gradum significant, alios genitivos post se habent : ut,

Ubicunque terrarum et gentium violatum jus civium
Romanorum est, ad communem libertatis causam
pertinet. *Cic.*

Nescire videmini quo amentiae progressi sitis. *Liv.*
Eo miseriarum venturus eram. *Sall.*

(a.) Sic post *tum, tunc*, genitivus *temporis* aliquando occurrit, sed non apud optimos auctores : ut,
Nihil tunc temporis amplius quam flere poteram.

118. *Pridie* et *postridie* genitivum *diei*, et accusativum partium mensis, vel nominum festorum, post se admittunt : ut,

Pridie ejus diei venit in senatum.
Pridie calendas abiit.

119. Adverbia quantitatis genitivum admittunt : ut,
Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum. *Sall.*

120. Quædam adverbia casus eosdem admittunt qui a vocibus, a quibus derivantur, exiguntur : ut,
Sulpicius Gallus omnium nobilium maximè Græcis
literis studuit. *Cic.*

Exercitum habuit quàm proxime hostem. *Cic.*

121. *Ergo* genitivum post se habet : ut,
Donari virtutis ergo benevolentiaëque. *Cic.*

122. *Procul* ablativo interdum jungitur : ut,
Multi suam rem bene gessere et publicam patriâ
procul. *Cic.*

(a.) Apud poetas et serioris ævi scriptores *clam*, *palam*, et
simul ablativo junguntur; et aliquando *usque* cum accusativo
vel ablativo : ut,

Clam uxore meâ et filio. *Ter.*

Simul his te, candide Furni, dicere possum. *Hor.*

Corpora usque pedes carbaso velunt. *Curt.*

CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

123. *CONJUNCTIONES* copulativæ, et disjunctivæ, si-
miles casus et modos et tempora conjungunt : ut,

Socrates docuit Xenophontem et Platonem.

Nec scribit nec legit.

Occidit,

Nulli flebilior quam tibi Virgili. *Hor.*

(a.) Nisi variæ constructionis ratio aliud poscat : ut,

Emi librum centussi et pluris.

Vixi Romæ et Venetiis.

124. Pro *quam* post comparisonem poetæ interdum
usurpant *atque* : ut,

Arctius atque hederæ procera astringitur ilex. *Hor.*

125. Cum comparatio significatur, sæpe usurpatur
tam, respondente *quam* : ut,

Vellem tam domestica ferre possem quam ista con-
temnere. *Cic.*

126. Cum significatur aliquid maximum esse quod
fieri potest, sæpe usurpatur superlativus præcedente
quam, interdum *quam possum* : ut,

Mihi nihil fuit optabilius quam ut quam gratissimus
erga te esse cognoscere. *Cic.*

Cæsar ad hostem quam maximis potuit itineribus
contendit. *Cæs.*

(a.) Pro *quam* ante superlativum *maximus, quantus* aliquando usurpatur: ut,

Hannibal quantam maximam vastitatem potest cædibus incendiisque efficit. *Liv.*

127. *Donec, quoad, et dum*, cum ad tempus refertur, indicativum modum plerumque exigunt, subjunctivum rarius: ut,

Priami dum regna manebant. *Virg.*

Milo in senatu fuit eo die quoad senatus dimissus est. *Cic.*

Donec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit. *Liv.*

Haud desinam donec perfecero. *Ter.*

Tertia dum regnantem viderit ætas. *Virg.*

Expectas fortasse dum hæc dicat. *Cic.*

128. *Dummodo, et dum, vel modo* pro *dummodo* usurpata, soli subjunctivo junguntur: ut,

Omnia postposui dummodo præceptis patris pārērem. *Cic.*

Oderint dum metuant. *Cic.*

Manent ingenia senibus modo permaneat studium et industria. *Cic.*

129. *Quum** causam significans, vel connectionem aliquam duarum sententiarum denotans, subjunctivo jungitur; si usurpetur pro *quod*, indicativo: ut,

Druentia, quum aquæ vim vebat ingentem, non tamen navium patiens est. *Liv.*

Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metûs plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare. *Cic.*

Præclare facis quum Luculli memoriam tenes. *Cic.*

130. *Quum*, sequente *tum*, interdum subjunctivo, sæpius indicativo jungitur: ut,

Quum multæ res in philosophiâ nequicquam satis explicatæ sint, tum perdifficilis quæstio est de naturâ Deorum. *Cic.*

* *Quum* sæpe scribitur *cum*.

Quum cognitionem juris augurii consequi cupio, tum mehercule tuis incredibiliter studiis delector. *Cic.*

131. *Quum* tempus significans interdum indicativo, interdum subjunctivo, jungitur: ut,

Qui non propulsat injuriam a suis, quum potest, injuste facit. *Cic.*

Ad Hannibalem quum ad lacum Averni esset, quinque nobiles juvenes venerunt. *Liv.*

Erit illud profecto tempus, quum gravissimi hominis fidem desideres. *Cic.*

132. *Antequam* et *priusquam* subjunctivo junguntur si res in dubio est, vel si duæ res de quibus agitur connectuntur; aliter, indicativum admittunt: ut,

Tempestas minatur antequam surgat. *Sen.*

Ante omnia veneunt quam gleba una ematur. *Cic.*

Quam bene vivebant Saturno rege, priusquam

Tellus in longas est patefacta vias. *Tib.*

133. *Quin* et *quominus* negationem, vel dubitationem, vel simile aliquid sequentia, subjunctivum exigunt: ut,

Non dubitat quin brevi Troja sit peritura. *Cic.*

Parmenio Philippum detertere voluit quominus medicamentum biberet. *Curt.*

Tiberium non solitudines protegebant quin tormenta pectoris fateretur. *Tac.*

134. Conjunctiones finales, *ut*, *quo*, *ne*, et aliæ ab his derivatæ, subjunctivum exigunt: ut,

Pylades Oresten se esse dixit ut pro illo necaretur. *Cic.*

Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. *Sen.*

Vereor ne tuum laborem augeam. *Cic.*

135. *Ut*, cum tempus vel comparisonem significat, indicativum post se habet: ut,

Ut sumus in Ponto, ter frigore constitit Ister. *Ovid.*

Ut fugiunt aquilam, timidissima turba, columbæ. *Ovid.*

(a.) *Ut* pro *ubi* (rarus est usus) indicativo jungitur : ut, Littus ut longe resonante Eoâ Tunditur undâ. *Cat.*

136. *Ut* pro *quamvis* subjunctivo jungitur : ut, Ut fueris dignior non competitor in culpâ est. *Cic.*

137. *Utinam* subjunctivum exigit : ut, Tu quoque cum ventis utinam mutabilis esses. *Cic.*
Illud utinam ne vere scriberem. *Cic.*

138. *Licet* subjunctivo jungitur ; *quamvis* subjunctivo sæpius quam indicativo, nisi apud poetas ; *quanquam* indicativo sæpius quam subjunctivo ; *etsi* vel indicativo vel subjunctivo : ut,

Improbitas, licet adversario molesta sit, judici invisâ est. *Quint.*

Quod turpe est, id, quamvis occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest. *Cic.*

Romani, quanquam prælio fessi erant, tamen procedunt. *Sall.*

Viri boni multa ob eam causam faciunt quod decet, etsi nullum consecuturum emolumentum vident. *Cic.*

139. *Si* et *nisi*, cum indicatur rem de quâ agitur vel existere, vel posse existere, indicativo modo, vel præsentem vel perfectum subjunctivi junguntur ; cum indicatur rem non existere, imperfectum vel plusquamperfectum subjunctivi exigunt : ut,

Hunc patris loco, si ulla in te pietas esset, colere debebas. *Cic.*

Si unquam visus tibi sum fortis, certè me in illâ causâ admiratus esses. *Cic.*

Tu, nisi ventis

Debes ludibrium, cave. *Hor.*

Multa me dehortantur a vobis, nî studium reipublicæ superet. *Sall.*

140. *Quasi*, *tanquam*, et similia, subjunctivum exigunt : ut,

Quid ego his testibus utor, quasi res incerta ac dubia esset. *Cic.*

Sic cogitandum est tanquam aliquis in intimum pectus inspicere possit. *Sen.*

141. *Quod, quia, quoniam*, indicativo junguntur, cum opinionem loquentis indicant; cum aliorum, subjunctivo: ut,

Refugit te, quia rugæ

Turpant et capitis nives. *Hor.*

Laudat Panætius Africanum, quod fuerit abstinens. *Cic.*

142. *Utrum, ne, an, num*, cum dubitationem vel obliquam interrogationem significant, subjunctivum postulant, etiamsi conjunctio ipsa subaudiatur: ut,

Difficile est dictu utrum hostes magis Pompeii virtutem pugnantes timuerint, an mansuetudinem victi dilexerint. *Cic.*

Legati speculari jussi sunt num sollicitati animi sociorum a rege Perseo essent. *Liv.*

Doleam necne doleam nihil interest. *Cic.*

143. *Ne*, cum prohibet, imperativo vel subjunctivo jungitur: ut,

Ne temne quod ultro

Præferimus manibus vittas. *Virg.*

Tu ne quæsieris quem mihi quem tibi

Finem Dî dederint. *Hor.*

144. Omnes voces quæ interrogationem meram exprimunt, indicativo junguntur: ut,

Tunc id veritus es? *Cic.*

Num eum facti piget? *Cic.*

Quis fuit horrendos qui primus protulit enses? *Tib.*

DE RELATIVO.

145. *Qui* causam significans subjunctivum exigit: ut, Clusini legatos Romam, qui auxilium a senatu peterent, misere. *Liv.*

Voluptas non est digna ad quam sapiens respiciat. *Sen.*

146. Cum vero relativa propositio substantivi locum supplet, verbum in indicativo ponitur : ut,

Num alii oratores probantur a multitudine, alii ab iis qui intelligunt? (i. e. a sapientibus) *Cic.*

Quoscunque de te queri audiui (i.e. omnes querentes) placavi. *Cic.*

147. Omnes voces indefinitè positæ, vel in obliquâ oratione, vel in sententiâ ab aliâ pendente, subiunctivum postulant : ut,

Innocentia est affectio talis animi quæ noceat nemini. *Cic.*

Cui scribam video. *Cic.*

Experto credite, quantus.

In clypeum assurgat, quo turbine torqueat hastam. *Virg.*

PRÆPOSITIONES.

148. Præpositiones

Adversum adversus, cis citra, apud, ante, penesque,

Intra, infra, contra, supra, post, circiter, inter,

Circa circum, ultra, juxta, erga, præter, et extra,

Ob, prope, per, propter, versus, trans, pone, secundum accusativum regunt : ut, [dum, ad,

Quem penes arbitrium est. *Hor.*

Ter circum Iliacos raptaverat Hectora muros. *Virg.*

Propter aquas. *Virg.*

Amicitia propter se expetenda est. *Cic.*

Per mare pauperiem fugiens. *Hor.*

Ludi decem per dies facti sunt. *Cic.*

Per me unum effectum est ut libertas in civitate maneret. *Cic.*

Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragœdias fecit. *Cic.*

Castra ad Cybistra locari. *Cic.*

Aliquot post menses ad Cæsarem venit. *Cic.*

Post equitem sedet atra cura. *Hor.*

Præter castra Cæsar suas copias transduxit. *Cæs.*

Omnibus sententiis præter unam condemnatus est.
Cic.

149. *A* (ante vocalem *ab*,) *absque, sine, coram, cum, de, e* (ante vocalem *ex*,) *præ, pro*, ablativum regunt: ut,
A te principium, tibi desinet. *Virg.*

Tecum mihi discordia est. *Hor.*

Non sine Dīs animosus infans. *Hor.*

Non loqui præ mœrore potuit. *Cic.*

Stabat pro templo et Capitolia celsa tenebat. *Virg.*

Cuncta pro hostibus erant. *Tac.*

E consulatu est profectus in Galliam. *Cic.*

Feliciter, et ex meâ sententiâ rempublicam gessimus.
Cic.

150. *In, super, sub, et subter* (quod tamen raro invenitur,) pro sensu accusativum vel ablativum regunt: ut,
Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis. *Hor.*

In Senatum venit. *Cic.*

Lucus in arce fuit summâ. *Ovid.*

Super et Garamantas et Indos

Proferet imperium. *Virg.*

Multa super Priamo rogitans, super Hectore multa.
Virg.

Manet sub Jove frigido Venator. *Hor.*

Sub eas literas statim recitatæ sunt tuæ. *Cic.*

Multaque me fugiunt primis spectata sub annis. *Ovid.*

Exercitus ejus sub jugum missus est. *Cæs.*

Augusti subter fastigia tecti

Æneam duxit. *Virg.*

Subter densâ testudine tuti. *Virg.*

151. *Tenus* ablativum singularem, ablativum vel genitivum pluralem regit; et semper casum suum sequitur:

Lateri capulo tenus abdidit ensem. *Virg.*

Et crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent. *Virg.*

Altera per jugulum pennis tenus acta sagitta est.
Ovid.

152. Præpositio in compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit quem extra compositionem regebat (*Vid. Reg. 75*): ut,

Detrudunt naves scopulo. *Virg.*

Prætereunt scopulos Ithacæ.

153. Verba composita cum *a, ab, ad, de*, et aliis præpositionibus, eandem præpositionem sæpe repetunt: ut,
Abstinuerunt a vino.

INTERJECTIONES.

154. Interjectiones non raro sine casu ponuntur: ut,
Spem gregis ah silice in nudâ connixa reliquit. *Virg.*

155. *O* vocantis vocativo, exclamantis vocativo vel accusativo, jungitur: ut,

O fortunatos nimium sua si bona nôrint

Agricolas. *Virg.*

O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori. *Virg.*

156. *Heu* et *proh* accusativo vel vocativo junguntur: ut,

Heu pietas, heu prisca fides. *Virg.*

Heu stirpem invisam. *Virg.*

Proh Deûm atque hominum fidem. *Ter.*

Proh sancte Jupiter. *Cic.*

157. *Hei* et *væ* dativo junguntur: ut,

Hei mihi, quod nullis amor est medicabilis herbis.
Ovid.

Væ misero mihi, quantâ de spe decidi. *Ter.*

158. *En* et *ecce* nominativo vel accusativo junguntur: ut,

Ecce tibi Italiæ tellus. *Virg.*

En quatuor aras;

Ecce duas tibi Daphni, duoque altaria Phœbo. *Virg.*

PROSODIA.

PROSODIA est pars Grammaticæ, quæ quantitatem syllabarum docet.

Dividitur Prosodia in tres partes, *Tonum*, *Spiritus*, et *Tempus*.

Hoc loco visum est nobis de *Tempore* tantum tractare.

TEMPUS est syllabæ proferendæ mensura.

Tempus breve sic notatur; ut, *Dōmīnūs*. Longum autem sic; ut, *cōtrā*.

Pes duarum syllabarum pluriumve constitutio est ex certâ Temporum observatione.

Pes duarum longarum syllabarum est spondæus; ut, *vīrtūs*.

Longa syllaba, duabus brevibus syllabis sequentibus, dactylum efficit; ut, *scrībērē*.

SCANSIO est legitima versûs in singulos pedes commensuratio.

Scansioni accidunt figuræ, *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*, et *Cæsura*.

I. *Synalæpha* est elisio vocalis in fine dictionis, ante alteram in initio sequentis: ut,

Sērā nīmīs vīt' ēst crāstīnā, vīv' hōdīē. Mart.
pro *vita, vive*.

At *heu* et *o* nunquam intercipiuntur.

II. *Ecthlipsis* est, quoties *m* cum suâ vocali perimitur; proximâ dictione à vocali exorsâ: ut,

Mōnstr' hōrrend', īnform', īngēns, cū lūmēn ādēptūm.
Virg:
pro *monstrum horrendum, informe*:

III. *Synæresis* est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio : ut,

Seū lentō fūerīnt ālveārīā vīmīnē tēxta. Virg.
quasi scriptum esset *alvaria*.

IV. *Diæresis* est, ubi ex unâ syllabâ dissectâ fiunt duæ : ut,

Debuerānt fūsōs evōlūissē sūōs. Ov. Ep.
evoluisse pro *evolvisse*.

V. *Cæsura* est, cū post pedem absolutum syllaba brevis in fine dictionis extenditur : ut,

Pēctorībūs inhīāns spīrāntiā cōnsulit ēxta. Virg.

DE GENERIBUS VERSUUM.

VERSUS heroïcus, qui *Hexameter* etiam dicitur, constat ex sex pedibus ; quintus locus dactylum, sextus spondæum peculiariter sibi vindicat ; reliqui hunc vel illum, prout volumus : ut,

Tītūrē tū pātūlāe rēcūhāns sūb tēgmīnē fāgī. Virg.

Repèritur aliquando spondæus etiam in quinto loco : ut,

Cārā Dēum sōbōlēs, māgnūm Jōvis īncrēmētūm. Virg.

Ultima cujuscunque versûs syllaba habetur communis.

VERSUS elegiacus, qui et *Pentametri* nomen habet, è duplici constat penthemimeri ; quarum prior duos pedes, dactylicos, spondiacos, vel alterutros comprehendit, cum syllabâ longâ ; altera etiam duos pedes, sed omninò dactylicos, cum syllabâ item longâ : ut,

Rēs ēst sōllicitī plēnā timōris āmor. Ovid. Epist.

PRIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in eâdem dictione, ubique positione longa est: ut, *vēntus*, *āxis*, *patrīzo*.

II. Quòd si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis præcedens etiam positione longa erit: ut,

Mājor sūm quām cūi pōssīt fōrtūnā nōcēre.

Syllabæ *jor*, *sum*, *quam*, et *sit*, positione longæ sunt.

(a.) At si prior dictio in vocalem brevem exeat, sequente à duabus consonantibus incipiente, interdum, sed rariùs, producitur: ut,

Fertē cīfī ferrūm, dātē tēlā, scāndītē mūros. Virg.

III. Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquidâ, communis redditur: ut, *pātris volūcris*. Quæ tamen regula in compositis non obtinet: ut, *admīror*, *ābrīpio*, *sūbruo*, *ōbruo*.

VOCALIS ante alteram in eâdem dictione ubique brevis est: ut, *Dēus*, *mēus*, *tūus*, *pīus*.

1. Excipias genitivos in *ius*: ut, *unŭus*, *illŭus*, &c. ubi *i* communis reperitur; licèt in *alterius* semper sit brevis, in *alius* semper longa.

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi et dativi quintæ declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit; ut *faciēi*: alioqui non; ut, *rēi*, *spēi*, *fidēi*.

Fi etiam in *fio* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut, *fierem*, *fieri*.

Omniā jam fūunt, fierī quāe pōssē nēgābam.

Dīus primam syllabam habet longam, *Dīana* communem.

Ōhe, interjectio, priorem syllabam communem habet: *Eheu* penultimam semper producit.

Vocalis ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit: ut, *Dicite, Piērides. Respice Lāerten.*

Et in possessivis Græcis: ut, *Ænēia nutrix. Rhodopēus Orpheus.*

Omnis diphthongus apud Latinos longa est: ut, *āurum, nēuter, musāe*: nisi sequente vocali, cum interdum corripitur: ut, *prāeire, prāeustus.*

DERIVATIVA eandem fere cum primitivis quantitatem sortiuntur: ut, *āmator, āmicus, āmabilis*, primā brevi ab *āmo*.

Excipiuntur tamen pauca, quæ, à brevibus deducta, primam syllabam producant: ut,

cōmo, à cōma,	} à fōveo,
fōmes,	
fōmentum,	
hūmanus, ab hōmo,	} à jūvo,
jūcundus,	
jūmentum,	
lex. lēgis, à lēgo,	
mācēro, à mācer,	
mōbilis, à mōveo,	
persōna, à persōno,	

rex rēgis,	} à rēgo,
rēgina,	
rēgūla,	
sēcūs, à sēcus,	
sēdes, à sēdeo,	
stīpendium, à stīps stīpis,	
tēgula, à tēgo,	
trāgula, à trāho,	
vox vōcis, à vōco.	

Et contrā sunt, quæ, à longis deducta, primam corripunt: ut,

ārena,	} ab āreo,
ārista,	
ārundo,	
āruspex, ab āra,	} à dīco,
dīcax,	
mālēdīcus,	
dītio, à dītis,	
dux dūcis, à dūco,	
fīdes,	} à fīdo,
perfīdus,	

frāgor,	} à frāngo,
frāgilis,	
lābo, à lābor,	
lūcerna, à lūceo,	
mōlestus, à mōles,	
ōdium, ab ōdi,	
pāciscor, à pax pācis,	
quandōquidem, à quandō,	
sīquidem, à sī,	
sōpor, à sōpio.	

Et alia nonnulla ex utroque genere, quæ relinquuntur studiosis inter legendum observanda.

COMPOSITA simplicium quantitatem sequuntur : ut, à *lēgo lēgis, perlēgo* ; *lēgo lēgas, allēgo* ; à *pōtens, impōtens* ; à *sōlor, consōlor*.

Excipiuntur tamen hæc brevia à longis enata : *dejēro pejēro*, à *jūro* ; *innūba, pronūba*, à *nūbo*.

OMNE præteritum dissyllabum priorem habet longam : ut, *lēgi, ēmi, mōvi*.

1. Excipias tamen, *bībi, dēdi, scīdi, stēti, stīti, tūli*, et *fīdi* à *fīdo*.

2. Primam præteriti geminantia primam brevem habent : ut, *cēcīdi* à *cado* ; *cēcīdi* à *cædo* ; *didīci, fēfelli, mōmordi, pēpendi, pūpugi, tētendi, tētigi, tōtondi, tūtudi*.

SUPINUM dissyllabum priorem habet longam : ut, *vīsum, lātum, lōtum, mōtum*.

Excipe *dātum, ĭtum, lītum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum, stātum*, et *cītum* à *cio cīs* ; nam *cītum* à *cio cīs*, quartæ, priorem habet longam.

Penultima tertiæ personæ pluralis perfecti activi in *-erunt* desinens, si antepenultima brevis sit, communis habenda est.

ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. *A* Finita producuntur : ut, *amā, contrā, ergā*.

Excipias, *itā, quiā, eiā*. Item omnes casus in *a*, cujuscunque fuerint generis, numeri, aut declinationis ; præter vocativos à Græcis in *as* ; ut, *ó Æneā* : et ablativum primæ declinationis ; ut, *musā*.

II. In *b, d, t*, puris desinentia, brevia sunt : ut, *āb, ād, cāput*.

III. In *c* desinentia producuntur : ut, *āc, sīc, et hīc* adverbium.

Sed *fāc, nēc, donēc* corripiuntur.

Prononem *hīc*, et neutrum ejus *hōc*, modò non sit ablativi casûs, communia sunt.

IV. *E* finita brevia sunt : ut, *marē, penē, legē, scribē*.

1. Excipiendæ sunt omnes voces quintæ inflectionis in *e* ; ut, *fidē, diē*, unà cum particulis indè enatis ; ut, *hodiē, quotidīē, pridīē, postridīē* ; item *quarē*, et si qua sunt similia.

2. Et secundæ item personæ singulares secundæ conjugationis ; ut, *docē, movē* : præter *cavē*, quod ultimam plerumque corripit.

Producuntur etiam monosyllaba in *e* ; ut, *mē, tē, sē* : præter *quē, nē, vē*, conjunctiones encliticas.

Quin et adverbia in *e*, ab adjectivis secundæ declinationis deducta, *e* longum habent: ut, *pulchrē, doctē, valdē* pro *validē*.

Quibus accedunt *fermē, fērē*: *benē* tamen et *malē* corripuntur omninò.

Postremò, quæ à Græcis per *η* scribuntur, naturâ producuntur, cujuscunque fuerint casûs, generis, aut numeri: ut, *Lethē, Anchisē, cetē, Tempē*.

V. *I* finita longa sunt: ut, *dominī, magistrī, amarī*.

Præter *mihī, tibī, sibī, ubī, ibī*, quæ sunt communia.

Nisī et *quasī* corripuntur.

Corripuntur quoque dativi et vocativi singulares nominum priorum in *is*, a Græcis derivatorum, quorum genitivus penultimâ brevi crescit: ut, dativi *Minoidī, Palladī, Phyllidī*; vocativi *Alexī, Amaryllī, Daphnī*.

VI. *L* finita corripuntur: ut, *animāl, Hannibāl, mēl, pugīl, consūl*.

Præter *nīl* (contractum à *nihil*), *sāl*, et *sōl*.

VII. *N* finita corripuntur: ut, *ān, carmēn, īn, Ilīōn, Itīn*.

Excipiuntur *quīn, nōn*; et nomina pauca a Græcis derivata, quæ penultimam genitivi producunt: ut, *delphīn, delphīnis; Xenophōn, Xenophōntis*.

Producuntur quoque accusativi masculini primæ declinationis in *ān* et *ēn*: ut, *Æneān, Anchisēn*; et accusativi fœminini in *ēn* et *rān*: ut, *Pēnelōpēn, Electrān*: cæteri fœminini in *ūn* corripuntur: ut, *Maiān, Iphigeniān*.

VIII. *O* finita longa sunt : ut, *dicō, virgō, porrō, legēdō*.

Excipiuntur *modō*, et composita ejus ; et *sciō, nesciō, putō, citō, egō, homō, cēdō*, quæ corripuntur.

(a.) Pauca alia sunt verba in *o* desinentia, quæ ultimam interdum corripunt : ut,

Te petō quem merui. Ov.

Non erō, terra, tuus. Ov.

Fortunam vultus fassa tegēdō suos. Ov.

Sed hæc exempla non sunt a tironibus imitanda.

Propria nomina virorum in *o* desinentia communia sunt : ut, *Polliō, Nasō*.

Duō quoque et *nemō* ultimam communem habent.

IX. *R* finita corripuntur : ut, *Cæsār, pēr, vīr, uxōr, turtūr*.

Producuntur autem *fār, Lār, Nār, vēr, fūr, cūr* ; *pār* quoque, cum compositis ; ut, *compār, impār, dispār*.

Græca etiam in *ēr*, quæ illis in *ηρ* desinunt : ut, *aēr, cratēr, charactēr, æthēr* ; præter *patēr* et *matēr*, quæ apud Latinos ultimam brevem habent.

X. *S* finita pares cum numero vocalium habent terminationes : nempè, *as, es, is, os, us, ys*.

I. *AS* finita producuntur : ut, *amās, musās, majestās, bonitās*.

Præter nomina propria Græca, quorum genitivus singularis penultimam brevem habet : ut, *Arcās, Pallās* ; genitivo, *Arcādōs, Pallādōs*.

Et præter accusativos plurales Græco more formatos : ut, *herōs, heroās* ; *gigās, gigantās*.

II. *Es* finita longa sunt : ut, *Anchisēs, sedēs, docēs, patrēs*.

1. Excipiuntur nomina in *es* tertiæ inflexionis, quæ penultimam genitivi crescentis corripunt: ut, *milēs*, *segēs*, *divēs*. Sed *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, et *pēs*, unà cum compositis, ut *bipēs*, *tripēs*, longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque, à *sum*, unà cum compositis, corripitur; ut, *potēs*, *adēs*, *prodēs*, *obēs*: quibus *penēs* adjungi potest.

3. Item neutra, et nominativi plurales Græcorum: ut, *hippomanēs*, *cacoëthēs*, *Cyclopēs*, *Naiadēs*.

III. *Is* finita brevia sunt: ut, *Parīs*, *panīs*, *tristīs*, *hilarīs*.

1. Excipe obliquos casus plurales in *is*, qui producuntur: ut, *musīs*, *mensīs* à *mensa*, *dominīs*, *templīs*; et *quīs* pro quibus.

2. Item producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis: ut, *Samnīs*, *Salamīs*; genitivo, *Samnītis*, *Salamīnis*.

3. Et monosyllaba item omnia; ut, *vīs*, *līs*: præter *is* et *quīs* nominativos, et *bīs* apud Ovidium.

Secunda persona singularis præsentis activi quartæ conjugationis producit *is*; ut, *audīs*; sic *possīs*, *velīs*, *nolīs*, *malīs*.

Secundæ personæ singulares futuri secundi activi indicativi, et perfecti subjunctivi, *īs* commune faciunt: ut, *fecerīs*, *dederīs*.

(a.) Porro in his temporibus secunda persona pluralis penultimam communem habet: ut, *dixeritis*, *transieritis*.

Gratīs et *forīs* ultimam producunt.

IV. *Os* finita producuntur: ut, *honōs*, *nepōs*, *dominōs*, *servōs*.

Præter *compōs*, *impōs*, *ōs assis*, et *eaōs*.

Et nomina propria derivata a Græcis in *os* : ut, *Delōs*, *Chaōs*, *Palladōs*, *Phyllidōs*.

v. *Us* finita corripuntur : ut, *famulūs*, *regiūs*, *tempūs*, *amamūs*.

Excipiuntur producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis : ut, *salūs*, *tellūs* ; genitivo, *salūtis*, *tellūris*.

Longæ sunt etiam omnes voces quartæ inflectionis in *us*, præter nominativum et vocativum singulares : ut, gen. sing. *manūs* ; nom. accus. voc. plur. *manūs*.

His accedunt etiam monosyllaba : ut, *crūs*, *thūs*, *mūs*, *sūs*.

Et Græca item per *sc* diphthongum, cujuscunque fuerint casûs : ut, nom. *Panthūs*, *Melampūs* ; gen. *Sapphūs*, *Clīūs*.

vi. *Ys* finita corripuntur : ut, *Itÿs*.

XI. *U* finita producuntur omnia : ut, *manū*, *genū*, *amatū*, *diū*.

XII. *Y* finita corripuntur : ut, *Tÿphÿ*.

PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS;

OR,

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS,

CONSTRUED.

PROPRIA *proper names quæ which* tribuuntur *are assigned* maribus *to the male kind* dicas *you may call* mascula *masculines*: ut *as*, sunt *are* Divorum *the names of the heathen Gods*; Mars *the God of war*, Bacchus *the God of wine*, Apollo *the God of wisdom*: Virorum *the names of men*; ut *as*, Cato *a noble Roman*, Virgilius *the Poet Virgil*: Fluviorum *the names of Rivers*; ut *as*, Tiberis *the Tiber*, Orontes, *a river by Antioch*: Mensium *the names of months*; ut *as*, October *the month October*: Ventorum *the names of winds*; ut *as*, Libs *the south-west wind*, Notus *the south wind*, Auster *the south wind*.

Montium *the names of mountains*: ut *as*, Ossa *mount Ossa*, Alpis *tamen but the Alps* est *is* muliebris *feminine*, et *and* Cæta *mount Cæta*, Cyllene *mount Cyllene*, Rhodope *mount Rhodope*, et *and* Ætna *mount Ætna* gravis *terrible* cæcis ignibus *with hidden fires*; Pelion *mount Pelion* est *neutrum is neuter*; Soracte *mount Soracte*, Ceraunia *the Ceraunian mountains*, neutra *are neuter*.

PROPRIA nomina *proper names* referentia *denoting* foemineum sexum *the female sex* tribuuntur *are given* foemineo generi *to the feminine gender*; sive *whether* sunt *they are* Dearum *the names of Goddesses*; ut *as*,

Juno Jupiter's wife, Venus the Goddess of beauty: Muliebria the names of women; ut as, Anna Anne, Philotis Philote: Urbium the names of cities; ut as, Elis a city of Peloponnesus, Opus a city of Locris: Regionum the names of countries; ut as, Græcia Greece, Persis Persia: Item also nomen the name insulæ of an island; ceu as, Creta Crete, Britannia Britain, Cyprus Cyprus.

Dulichium the island Dulichium neutrum is neuter, ut as ventura regula a coming rule monstrat shews. Excipias etiam you may except also quasdam urbes some cities; nam for Sulmo Sulmo et and Delphi the town Delphi mascula are masculine, et similes and similar words. Selinus the town Selinus genus est utrumque is of both genders, Pharsalus so is Pharsalus, et Marathon and Marathon. Quædam some are neutralia neuter; ut as, Argos Argos, Tusculum Tusculum, item also Tibur Tivoli, Tarentumque and Taranto imbelles luxu effeminate from luxury; Pergamaque and Troy, et and quot pluralia as many plural nouns as præstant finem in a have their termination in a. Præneste Præneste dat gives fœmineum et neutrum the feminine and neuter gender, Ilion so does Troy, Anxur and Terracina. Latium Latium est neutrum is neuter, Bosphorus the Bosphorus mas is masculine; adjice add Pontus Pontus.

DISCES *you will learn that nomina gemmarum the names of precious stones are fœminei generis of the feminine gender; veluti as, sapphirus a sapphire; ast but opalus an opal mas is masculine atque and smaragdus an emerald. Cernes item you will see also nomina the names arborum of trees muliebria feminine; ut as, alnus an alder-tree, cupressus a cypress-tree, cedrus a cedar-tree. Spinus a sloe-tree mas is masculine, oleaster a wild olive-tree mas is masculine. Plerumque videbis you will for the most part see cætera the rest in er ending in er neutrale genus of the neuter gender; quale as, papaver a*

poppy, acer a maple-tree; quæis adjice to which add thus frankincense atque and robur an oak. Cytisus hadder rubusque and a bramble adjungunt add muliebre the feminine gender mari to the masculine: intubus endive in numero plurali in the plural number habet has intuba, neutrum of the neuter gender.

NOMINA *the names volucrum of birds; ceu as, passer a sparrow, hirundo a swallow: ferarum of wild beasts; ut as, felis a cat, vulpes a fox: et and Piscium the names of fishes; ut as, ostrea an oyster, cetus a whale, sunt are dicta called epicœna nouns of the epicene gender; quibus to which vox ipsa the termination itself feret will give genus aptum the right gender.*

Multa etiam many also dabunt will give commune genus the common gender; ut as, lepus a hare, anser a goose, vespertilio a bat, mus a mouse, grus a crane, bos an ox or cow, canis a dog, atque and elephantus an elephant. Sus a pig, tigris a tiger, et and anguis a snake jungunt join fœmineum the feminine gender mari to the masculine; et and serpens a serpent, damæque and deer, et and talpæ moles egentes lumine deprived of sight.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

As, es, words ending in as and es erunt will be mascula masculines: inflexio prima the first declension habebit will have a, e, words ending in a or e fœminei generis of the feminine gender, nisi unless sensus the sense prohibet forbids. Boreas the north wind, satrapes a satrap, mas are masculine; litera a letter muliebris is feminine, Circe and Circe. Sed but scriba a scribe mas genus is the masculine gender, sic so scurra a buffoon, athleta an athlete, lanista a fencing master.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Secunda the second declension dat gives um nouns

ending in um neutrale neuter, us et er nouns ending in us and er plerumque generally mas masculine. Sic so regnum a kingdom neutrum is neuter, dominus a master mas is masculine, atque and magister a teacher. Sed but quæ dicta supra sunt what has been said before dabunt will give legenti the reader pauca a few words excipienda to be excepted; nam for malus an apple arbor being a tree muliebris erit will be feminine, et Abydos and Abydos nomen the name urbis of a city: sic so alvus a belly, humus the ground, colus a distaff, atque and carbasus linen, et and vannus a winnowing machine; sic so phaselus a boat nota known Nilo to the Nile.—Pauca etiam a few also deducta derived Græcis from the Greeks occurrent will occur, papyrus paper, antidotus an antidote, costus the herb zedoary, diphthongus a diphthong, byssus fine flax, et and illa those words quot as many as os breve os short claudit ends; ceu as, Delos Delos, Sestos Sestos, et and Isthmos an isthmus; sed but virus poison, pelagus the sea neutralia ure neuter, et and adjice add vulgus the common people, quamvis although interdum sometimes ponas you may class hoc this inter mascula among masculines; non genus est ullum there is not any gender quo in which penus provisions non inveniatur will not be found.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.—MASCULINES.

Crede consider voces the words quas which tertia inflexio the third declension reddit affords mares masculine, si if or, os, er, o quoque and o claudit terminate rectum the nominative case; vel or quas those which es finit ends, quibusque and in which genitivus the genitive case crescit increases: sic so, honor honour, atque and heros a hero, crater a cup, sermoque and a discourse, tapesque and a carpet.—At but soror a sister atque and uxor a wife muliebria semper are always feminine, et and arbor a tree; sed but cor a heart, marmor marble, ador corn; et and æquor the sea neutralia semper are always neuter.

Sic *so* *cos* a *whetstone* est is *fœminei* generis of the *feminine* gender, *dosque* and a *dowry*, *sed* but *os seu* whether *oris* habet it makes *oris* (meaning a *face*), *sive* *ossis* or *ossis* (meaning a *bone*), *erit* will be *neutrale neuter*, *chaosque* and *chaos*, *et* and *melos* *melody*; *atque* *alia* and other words *deducta* derived a *linguâ* *Pelagâ* from the *Greek* language. *Tuber*, *fructus* when meaning the *fruit*, *mas* est is *masculine*, *sed* but *erit* it will be *muliebris* *feminine* ut *as* *arbor* the *tree*. *Linter* a *boat* *communis* is *common*; *ver* *spring* *neutrum* is *neuter*, *verber* *so* are a *stripe*, *et* and *uber* a *teat*, *atque* and *cadaver* a *carcass*, *iter* a *journey*, *spinther* a *buckle*, *quibus* *adjice* to which *add* *tuber* a *mushroom*, *atque* and *quot* *nomina* as many *nouns* as *finita* per *er* ending in *er*, *notant* denote *plantas* *plants*. *Excipias* *quoque* you may except also, *lector* o *reader*, *hyperdissyllabon* a *word* of more than two *syllables* in *do* ending in *do*, *et* *quot* and as many *words* as *io* *claudit* ends, *deducta* being derived *verbis* from *verbs*; *velut* as *libido* *lust*, *formidoque* and *fear*; *sic* *so* *dictio* *speaking*, *lectio* *reading*; *porro* moreover *caro* *flesh* est is *muliebris* *feminine*, *atque* and *echo* *echo*, *atque* and *Argo* the *Argo* *et* and *imago* an *image*; *cupido* *love* est is *rite* properly *muliebris* *feminine*, *cum* when *notat* it speaks of *affectum* the *passion*, *et* *tamen* and yet *vates* *poets* *interdum* sometimes *cogunt* *hoc* *press* this in *mascula* into the list of *masculines*. *Disces* you will learn *pauca* that a few *finita* per *es* ending in *es* *fœminei* generis are of the *feminine* gender, *licet* *crescentia* although *increasing* in the *genitive* case; *merges* a *fork-ful*, *mercesque* and a *reward*, *quiesque* and *rest*, *et* and *teges* a *mat*, *atque* and *seges* a *cornfield*; *quadrupes* a *quadruped* *communis* is *common*, *et* and *ales* a *bird*.

DECLENSION III.—FEMININES.

Omne *quod* every word which exit in ends in *as*, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *x*, *es* *quoque* and *es*, *quando* when non creacit

it does not increase genitivo in the genitive case, erit will be muliebre feminine; superque and moreover s liquidâ præeunte s when preceded by a liquid præbet idem genus gives the same gender, memento remember; sic so pietas piety, fraus fraud, atque and chlamys a cloak, navisque and a ship, ratisque and a ship, pax peace, radix a root, nubes a cloud, et and hyems winter, mors death; excipe except pauca a few; as assis a pound weight mas erit will be masculine, compôstaque and its compounds; elephasque and an elephant mas is masculine, et and quicquid Græcum whatever word originally Greek, habet -antis makes -antis in the genitive, ut as Atlas Atlas, atque and gîgas a giant, adamas adamant, vas vâdis a surety, e sensu because of the sense, est mas is masculine, vas vasis a vessel, neutrum is neuter; sic so fas right neutrale is neuter, nefasque and wrong. Videbis quoque you will see also multa many nouns is finita ending in is mascula masculine, pulvis dust, et and pollis bran, cucumis a cucumber, sanguis blood, lapis a stone, amnis a river, et and axis an axletree, glis a dormouse, caulis a stalk, cassis, cum non crescit genitivo, when, meaning a net, it does not increase in the genitive, (cassis enim for a helmet, a quo from which cassidis venit comes est is muliebre feminine) collis a hill, fascis a faggot, follis a bellows, funis a rope, fustis a club, et and ensis a sword, ignis fire, panis bread, piscis a fish, postis a door-post, et and adjice add mensis a month, orbis a world, sentis a thorn, torris a brand, vectis a lever, vermis a worm, et and anguis a talon, natalis a birth-day; et and quæ words which rarius extant are seldom found numero primo in the singular number, annales annals, addeque and add molares eye-teeth rapidis jugalibus to fleet carriage-horses. Quinetiam moreover cernes you will see pauca a few communia common; canalis a channel, et and scrobis a ditch, et and torquis a chain, callis a path, finis an end, cinis ashes, etsi although hæc duo these two last plurali in the plural number apparent tibi are seen by you tantum mascula as

masculine only. Et quoniam *and since* nunc vir *sometimes a man*, nunc foemina *sometimes a woman* dicitur *is spoken of*, hostis *an enemy* est *is* commune genus *of the common gender*, civis *so is a citizen*, testis *a witness*, patruelis *a cousin*. Lex *potior a law of superior weight* est *data has been assigned* cur *why* Halys *the river* Halys exstet *mas is masculine*, et *and* Othrys *mount* Othrys. Es non crescens *es not increasing in the genitive dat gives* mascula nulla *no masculine nouns* acinace dempto *except a scimitar*. At *but* vates *a poet* commune *is common*, vepres *etiam also a bramble*, atque *and* palumbes *a dove*. —Græca *the words derived from Greek* quæ *which* ax finit *end in ax* sunt *are* plurima *mascula mostly masculines*, thorax *a breast-plate*, et *and* cordax *a kind of dance*, anthrax *a coal*; sic *so* plurima *many words* quæ *which* ex claudit *ex ends*, qualis *such as* apex *a top*, codex *a book*, cimex *a bug*, cortexque *and bark*, culexque *and a gnat*, grex *a flock*, vertex *a top*, murex *a shell-fish*, pulex *a flea*, caudexque *and a stool*, silexque *and flint*. —Pauca *a few* per ix finita *ending in ix*, calix *a cup*, fornix *a vault*, ita *so* phoenix *a phoenix*, Græcaque *and words derived from Greek* in yx *ending in yx*, ut *as* onyx *an onyx*, et *and* oryx *an antelope*, bombyxque *and a silkworm*, calyxque *and the cup of a flower*; sic *so* quincunx *five ounces*, septunx *seven ounces*, et cætera *and the rest of such words* mascula *are masculine*; porro *moreover* adeps *fat*, dens *a tooth*, fons *a fountain*, mons *a mountain*, pons *a bridge*, mascula *are masculine*; hydropsque *and the dropsy*, chalybsque *and steel*, gryps *a griffin*, torrens *a torrent*, oriensque *and the east*, rudensque *and a cable*, bidensque *and a sheep*, tridensque *and a trident*; epopsque *both a hoopoe*, meropsque *and a woodpecker* mascula *are masculine*, et *and* stirps *a stock* habetur *is accounted communis common*.

DECLENSION III.—NEUTERS.

Quæ the nouns which a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us, claudunt end leguntur are found in reading neutra to be neuter; videas you may see exempla examples; poema a poem, et and mare the sea, misy vitriol, sinapi mustard, alec pickle, lac milk, mel honey, animalque and an animal; carmen a verse, et and adde add caput a head, laquear a ceiling, jecur the liver, adjice add tempus time. Sol the sun, mugil a mullet, mascula are masculine; sic so sal salt plerumque generally, pluralique and in the plural number sales wit, semper always. Præsul a president et and exul an exile et and vigil a sentinel communia are common; fidicen a harpist, ren a kidney, pecten a comb, mascula are masculines; et and addas you may add paucissima a very few deducta derived a Græcâ linguâ from the Greek language, delphin a dolphin, lichen ringworm, et and pæan a song in honour of Apollo; primâque e lege and according to the first rule in the book, Cithæron mount Cithæron; sindon muslin, atque and icon an image, et and Amazon an Amazon, muliebria sunt are feminine; et and alcyones kingfishers, quæ which word rarius exstant is seldom found numero primo in the singular number. Par, significans meaning socium a mate, mas is masculine; turtur a turtle dove mas is masculine, et and augur a soothsayer, fur a thief, vultur a vulture, sic so furfur bran: pauca a few in us ending in us muliebria are feminine, ut as virtus virtue, incus an anvil, tellus the earth, palus a marsh, atque and juvenus youth, atque and pecus a flock, making pecudis in the genitive case; dans when it makes pecoris meaning a herd accipe take it neutrum as neuter.

DECLENSION IV.

U neutrum a noun ending in u is neuter, ut as cornu a horn; us a noun ending in us mas is masculine, ceu as

cursus a course, et and actus an act of a play; porticus a portico, atque and tribus a tribe, muliebria are feminine, acusque and a needle, domusque and a house, et and manus a hand, et and quercus an oak, sic so idus the ides of the month, cum quinquatribus and a feast in honour of Minerva called Quinquatrus; sensus the sense monstrat shows anus an old woman, nurus a daughter-in-law, et and socrus a mother-in-law muliebria to be feminine.

DECLENSION V.

Quinta the fifth declension dat gives muliebre genus the feminine gender, ut as spes hope; at but dies a day est is numero plurali in the plural number mas tantum masculine only; primo in the singular number commune it is common.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives habentia having duntaxat only unam vocem one termination, ut as, felix happy, audax bold, retinent keep genus omne every gender sub unâ under that one ending: si if cadunt they fall sub under geminâ voce a double termination, velut as, omnis, et and omne all, vox prior the former word est is commune duûm the common of two genders, vox altera the second word neutrum is neuter: at but si if variant they vary tres voces the three endings, ut as, sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred; vox prima the first word est is mas masculine, altera the second foemina feminine, tertia the third neutrum is neuter.*

Sunt queis there are some in which plurales casus the plural cases in a ending in a non adhibentur are not used, pauper poor, inops poor, puber of ripe age, sospes safe, cum with degener degenerate, uber fruitful, et and dives rich, locuples rich, memor mindful, immemor un-mindful, atque and superstes surviving.

NOUNS HETEROCLITE,

OR,

IRREGULAR,

CONSTRUED.

QUÆ *those nouns which variant change genus their gender aut or flexum declension, quæcunque and whatsoever nouns novato ritu after a new manner deficient fall short ve or superant exceed in declining, sunt let them be called Heteroclita Heteroclites, or nouns irregular.*

CERNIS *you see hæc these nouns variantia varying genus the gender in variis numeris in the different numbers.*

Nam for hæc these words maria masculine primo numero in the singular number sunt neutra are neuter secundo in the plural : tartarus horribilis horrid hell ; sic so sibilus a hiss, intubus endive, exstant are seen. At but jocus a jest addit utrumque genus adds both genders plurali numero to the plural number, et and locus a place :—hæc these words primo muliebria are feminine in the singular, neutra neuter secundo in the plural ; Pergamos Troy, et and ostrea the oyster exquirenda to be sought lautis cœnis for rich suppers, carbasus and linen :—hæc these words habebunt will have neutrum the neuter gender primo in the singular number, mas the masculine altero in the other ; et both siser a parsnip, et and cœlum heaven, Argosque and Argos amatum loved Junoni by Juno. Rastrum a rake exstat exists genere utroque in each gender plurali in the plural, et

and frenum a bridle, quin moreover epulum a feast primo in the singular, ast but epulæ leguntur is read plurale in the plural.

PROPAGO *the stock quæ which sequitur follows est is manca defective casu in case, numerove or in number.*

HIS *neutris in these neuters poteris tu you will be able cernere to see nullos casus no cases, nî except qui those which sunt tibi are, ut scis as you know, semper always idem the same in hoc genere in this gender. Hippomanes a humour in mares, cacoethes a bad habit, epos an epic poem, melos melody, adjice add gummi gum, et and fas right, mane the morning, nihil nothing, pondo weight, instar likeness; plurali in the plural, Tempe the vale of Tempe, grata pleasant perenni sub zephyro with perpetual zephyrs, tot so many, quot how many, et and omnes numeri all nouns of number à tribus from three ad centum to a hundred, quæ which vocantur are called aptota aptotes.*

SUNT *quoque there are also nomina multa many nouns quæis to which rectus casus the nominative case abest is wanting, aut alii or other cases, deficientes deficient nullo certo ordine in no certain order, ut as fors chance, frugis corn, opis help, dapis a feast, et and vicis a turn, impetis violence, et and vis force, verberis a stripe, et and fidis a lyre, atque and lues a plague, sordemque and dirt, vepremque and a bramble; quin moreover pauca a few videnda sunt are to be seen ablativo solo in the ablative case alone, ut sunt as are com-pede a fetter, fauce a jaw, prece prayer, atque and ambage a circuit; sed but omnia all these plerumque leguntur are generally found integra entire plurali numero in the plural number. Sic so jussu by order, natu by birth, permissu by leave, sponte of one's own*

accord, rogatu by asking, mandatu by command; sed his but to these et pluralis the plural also deficit is wanting, atque and plura quoque more also occurrent will occur tibi to you suo tempore quæque each in its good time.

Hæc these words nunquam habebunt will never have pluralem numerum a plural number, nam for sensus the sense prohibet prevents it; cœnum mud, limus clay, sic so triticum wheat, et and aurum gold, argentum silver, et and paria similar words; his to these pietas piety addenda is to be added, pudorque and shame, et and sitis thirst, atque and fames hunger, infantia infancy, firma juvenus vigorous youth, atque and senecta gravis sad old age, vel or senectus, vox magis apta a better word; ver spring, vesper evening, letum death, specimen a specimen, victusque and food, supellexque and furniture, et and virus poison, sanguis blood, plebs the people atque and ignobile vulgus the mean common people, cum paucis aliis with a few others, sic so nomina propria cuncta all proper names.

MASCULA *these masculines sunt are contenta confined numero secundo to the plural number tantum only, manes ghosts, majores ancestors, cancelli lattices, liberi children, et and antes the fore-ranks of vines, primores chiefs, proceres nobles, fasti simul also annals, atque and minores posterity, inferi the gods below, item also superi the gods above, lemures spectres, quibus to which adde add penates household gods, et and loca names of places plurali of the plural number, quales as que both Gabii a city in Italy que and Locri the inhabitants of Locris, et and quæcunque whatever nouns similis rationis of like nature legas you may read passim in authors.*

Hæc these nouns sunt are fœminei generis of the feminine gender, que and numeri secundi of the plural number; exuviæ any thing stript off from the body, pha-

leræ *horse-trappings*, grates *thanks*, et and ineptiæ *follies*, et and idus *the ides of a month*, blanditiæ *caresses*, induciæ *a truce*, simul also que both insidiæ *an ambush*, que and minæ *threats*, excubiæ *watch by day or night*, nonæ *the nones of a month*, nugæ *trifles*, tricæque and toys, calendæ *the calends of a month*, quisquilæ *the sweepings or refuse of any thing*, thermæ *a hot bath*, cunæ *a cradle*, diræ *curses*, que and exequiæ *funeral rites*, feriæ *holidays*, et and inferiæ *sacrifices performed to the dead*, sic so primitiæque both the first fruits of the year, plagæque and nets. Deliciæ *delight*, tenebræque and darkness, et and valvæ *folding-doors*, divitiæque and riches, item also nuptiæ *a marriage*, et and lactes *the small guts*: Thebæ *Thebes* et and Athenæ *Athens* addantur may be added, quod genus of which sort invenias you may find et also nomina plura more names locorum of places.

Hæc neutra *these nouns neuter pluralia of the plural number* leguntur are read rariùs seldom primo in the singular; moenia *the walls of a city*, cum with tesquis *rough and desert places*, præcordia *the midriff of the body*, lustra *the dens ferarum of wild beasts*, arma *arms*, mapalia *Numidian cottages*, sic so bellaria *junkets*, munia *an office or charge*, castra *a camp*; funus *a funeral* petit requires *justa solemnities*, et and virgo *a virgin* petit requires *sponsalia espousals*; disertus *an eloquent man* amat loves *rostra the pulpit*, puerique and children gestant carry *crepundia rattles*, infantesque and infants colunt *cunabula lie in cradles*; augur *a soothsayer* consulit consults *exta the entrails*, piæ puellæ *pious maidens* connectunt weave *sacra sarta sacred garlands*. Festa *the feasts* deûm of the gods, ceu as Bacchanalia *feasts dedicated to Bacchus*, poterunt will be able jungi to be joined. Quòd si and if leges you shall read plura more, licet reponas you may place them quoque also hâc classe in this rank.

Porro moreover invenies tu you will find, lector o reader,

nomina pauca *a few nouns* secundæ of the second declension sumentia *taking* etiam *also* quosdam casus *some cases* quartæ of the fourth, atque *and* præcipue *particularly* dedignantia *disdaining* fines *is* atque *e* the terminations *is and e*; ut *as* laurus *a bay tree* necnon *and* ficus *a fig*, domus *a house*, altaque pinus *and a lofty pine*, et *and* colus *a distaff*, et *and* cornus *a cornel tree*, cupressusque *and the cypress* invisa *hated* vivis *by the living*.

AS IN PRÆSENTI, &c.

OR,

THE RULES FOR VERBS,

CONSTRUED.

AS in præsentī *a verb making as in the present tense* format *forms* perfectum *the perfect tense* in avi: ut *as*, no nas *to swim* navi, vocito vocitas *to call* often vocitavi. Deme *except* lavo *to wash* lavi, juvo *to help* juvi, quin *moreover* cubo *to lie* semper dat *always makes* cubui, seco *to cut* dat *makes* secui, mico *to shine* reddit *gives* micui, sic *so* frico *to rub* dat *makes* fricui, domo *to tame* dat *makes* domui, a *from* sono *to sound* sonui format *is formed*, tonoque *and to thunder* generabit *will make* tonui. Adde tibi *add* crepo *to crack*, quod *which* makes crepui, veto *to forbid*, quod *which* dat *makes* vetui. Interdum *sometimes* neco *to kill* dat *makes* necui, plerumque *usually* necavi, applico *to apply* sæpius dabit

will oftener give applicui, rarius more seldom -avi; at but supplico to supplicate multiplico to multiply semper formantur are always formed in -avi. Do das to give vult will formare form ritè by custom dedi, sto stas to stand steti.

ES in præsenti a verb making es in the present tense format forms perfectum the perfect tense dans ui by ui; ut as nigreo nigres to grow black nigrui: moneo to advise dat makes monui, et and languéo to languish fugiens avoiding geminum u the double u habebit will have langui. Sed but ingenuus puer the well-bred boy videbit will see multa many words excipienda to be excepted. Veo, fit becomes vi, ut as moveo to move movi, caveo quoque also to beware of cavi, ferveo item also to be hot habebit will have fervi, sed but sæpe often et also ferbui. Fleo fles to weep dat makes flevi, neo to spin nevi, deleo to efface format forms delevi, exoleo to fade, et verbum simile omne and every similar word dat makes -evi. Compleo to fill format forms complevi, repleoque and to fill replevi; cieo to summon dat makes civi, sed but præteritum the perfect raro exstat is seldom seen. Plurima sunt there are many verbs quorum perfectum whose perfect desinit in si ends in si, ut as jubeo to order jussi, maneo to remain mansi, et and ardeo to burn arsi, mulceo to soothe mulsi, suadeo to advise suasi, rideo to smile risi, sic so hæreo to stick formabit will form hæsi, torqueo to twist torsi.

Si if l vel r l or r stet stand ante before geo, geo ver-titur is changed in si into si: ut as urgeo to urge ursi; mulgeo to milk mulsi, fulgeo to shine fulsi. Sunt etiam there are some too in deo ending in deo quæ which di dent make di, prandeo to dine prandi, et and video to see, sedeo to sit, assideo to sit by, sic so strideo to hiss stridi.—Quatuor four formantur are formed in xi in xi, sic so frigeo to be cold frixi, et and augeo to increase auxi, luceo to shine lugeo quoque and to grieve habent have luxi.—Syllaba prima the first syllable geminatur is repeated quatuor his infra in these four verbs

below; namque *for* pendeo *to hang* vult *will have* pependi, mordeoque *and to bite* momordi, spondeo *to promise* sponendi; tondeo *to shear* vult habere *will have* totondi.—Tria verba *three verbs* sequuntur *follow* formam passivi solam *the form of the passive voice only*; gaudeo *to be glad* gavisus, soleo *to be accustomed* solitus, et *and* audeo *to dare* ausus; quin *moreover* pauca *a few* carent *want* perfecto *the perfect*, ut *as* mæreo *to grieve* monstrat *shows*, atque *and* aveo *to wish*, atque *and* hebeo *to be dull*, scateo *to be full*, vegeo *to be vigorous*, imminéoque *and to impend*, atque *and* aliæ voces *other words* quas *which* usus *practice* rite docebit *will shew* thoroughly.

TERTIA *the third conjugation* formabit *will form* præteritum *the perfect tense* ut *as* manifestum *is shewn* hic *here*.

Bo fit *is made* psi, *ceu as* scribo *to write* scripsi, sed *but* bibo *to drink*, lambo *to lick*, et *and* scabo *to scratch*, faciunt *make* bi, quin *moreover* occumbo *to lie down* dat *makes* occubui.

Co fit *becomes* xi, ut *as* dico *to say* dixi, sed *but* parco *to spare* peperci, et *and* vinco *to conquer* vici, sic *so* ico *to strike*, vetus *an old word*, facit *makes* ici.

Sco fit *becomes* vi, ut *as* pascō *to feed* pavi; attamen *but* inde profectum *its compound* compesco *to check* format *forms* compescui, et *and* adjice *add* disco *to learn* quod *which* semper *always* format *forms* didici, poscoque *and to ask* forms poposci.—Verba inceptiva *inceptive verbs* sequuntur *follow* formam *the form* simplicium *of the simple verbs* from which they are derived, nam *for* caleo *to be warm* format *forms* calui, calescoque *and to begin to be warm* makes also calui; glisco *to grow*, atque *and* fatisco *to split* jactant *boast* of perfectum nullum *no perfect tense*, cum paucis aliis *with a few others* rite profectis *regularly derived* a nomine *from a noun*.

Do fit *becomes* si, ut *as* claudio *to shut* clausi, cedo *to yield* geminans *s doubling the s* dat *makes* cessi; pauca

a few dabunt will make di, ut *as* scando to climb, prehendo to take, accendo to inflame, cudo to hammer, mando to eat, defendo to defend, edo to eat, pando to lay open, et and strido to creak, sido to sit; findo to cleave, et and fundo to pour abjiciunt n throw away n, inde thence come fidi, fudi; rudo to bray dat gives rudivi, rarum a rare form: quinetiam moreover paucis in a few words syllaba prima the first syllable geminatur is doubled, pendo to weigh makes pependi, tendo to bend tetendi, cædo to beat cēcīdi, et and cado to fall dat gives cēcīdi, tundo to beat, tutudi; ultima vero but the last syllable plerumque usually geminatur is doubled in natis in words compounded a of do to give, ut *as* edo to utter, abdo to hide, condo to build, reddoque and to restore, et and cætera the rest formant form didi: videbis tamen yet you will see abscondo that to hide formare forms abscondi, fido to trust habebit will have formam the form passivi of the passive, fisus sum.

Go, fit is made xi; ut *as* jungo to join junxi: sed but r the letter r ante before go, vult will have si; ut *as* spargo to sprinkle sparsi; lego to read legi, et and ago to act facit makes egi; et and frango to break fregi, pango pro for figere to fasten panxi; inde tamen compôsta but its compounds semper tibi dabunt will always give you -pegi; cum when cernis you see pepigi, præsens the present tense plerumque usually est is paciscor to covenant; tango to touch dat gives tetigi, pungo to prick dabit will give ordine in order pupugi, sed but compôsta its compounds make -punxi, ambigo to doubt, vergo to incline, carent are without perfecto the perfect tense.

Guo, format tibi forms xi; ceu *as* restinguo to extinguish restinxi.

Ho, fit is made xi; ceu *as* traho to draw traxi docet shews, et and veho to carry vexi.

Lo, fit is made ui; ceu *as* colo to till colui: excipe except psallo to play upon an instrument psalli; excello to excel sequitur follows legem the regular rule, sed but

percello to strike habebit will have perculi; pello to drive away dat makes pepuli, fallo to deceive fefelli, vello to pluck dat tibi gives you sæpius usually velli, est ubi sometimes vulsi.

Mo, fit becomes mpsi; ceu as como to deck the hair compsi, at but emo to buy facit makes emi. Deinde then vomoque both to vomit, fremoque and to roar, gemoque and to groan, tremoque and to tremble sequuntur follow; quæ which dabunt will give perfecta their perfects per ui in ui; et and premo to press dabit will give pressi.

No, fit becomes vi; ceu as sino to permit sivi; quin moreover cerno to see ordine mutato changing the order of its letters makes crevi, sic so does sperno to despise, sternoque and to strew makes stravi, gigno to beget, pono to put, cano to sing, dant make genui, posui, cecini; cujus compôsta whose compounds dant ui make ui, ut as concino to sing together concinui.

Po, fit becomes psi; ut as sculpo to carve sculpsi, carpo quoque also to gather makes carpsi; sed but rumpo to break semper always format makes rupi, strepo to roar strepui.

Quo, fit becomes xi; ceu as coquo to cook coxi, excipe except linquo to leave liqui.

Ro, fit becomes si, sæpe s geminato s being often doubled, quod which gero to carry monstrat shews, dans making gessi; tero to rub dat makes trivi, curroque and to run makes cucurri, quæro to seek quæsivi, neque enim nor let fero to bear prætereatur be passed over, quod which habet has tuli, sero to sow dat makes sevi, sed but compôsta ejus its compounds inserto to ingraft or to insert among, consero to plant together or to connect, dant make et both -sevi et and -serui, formâ the form mutatâ varying ad sensum with the sense; sed but desero to desert item also assero to assert formant form ui tantum only ui; furo to rage dat gives nullum præteritum no perfect tense.

So, fit becomes si; ut as viso to go to see visi; adjice

add pinso to grind pinsi, item also making pinsui; depso quoque also to knead depsui; at but omne -esso every word ending in -esso dat gives -essivi, ut as arcesso to send for, incesso to attach, atque and lacesso to provoke probat proves.

To, fit is made ti; ut as verito to turn verti; sic so verso ordine changing the order of the letters obstiti fluit proceeds ab from obsisto to oppose, adde add insisto to stand upon, resisto to resist; mitto to send dat gives misi, peto to ask vult formare will form petivi, sterto to snore habet has stertui, meto to reap messui: ab from -ecto fit is made -exi, ut as flecto to bend flexi; necto to weave dat gives nexui, habetque and it has nexi, sic so pecto to comb dat gives pexui, habet quoque and also has pexi.

Vo, fit is made vi; ut as volvo to roll volvi; excipe except vivo to live vixi,

Xo, habet has xui; ut as texo to weave, quod which habebit will have texui, monstrat sheweth.

Cio, fit is made ci; ut as facio to do feci; quoque also jacio to cast jeci: allicio to allure allexi, elicio to elicit format tibi gives you elicui. Aspicio to behold makes aspexi, sic so conspicio to see inspicioque and to inspect.

Dio, fit is made di; ut as fodio to dig fodi.

Gio, fit is made gi; ceu as fugio to fly fugi.

Pio, fit is made pi; ut as capio to take cepi; ecce behold cupio to desire cupivi, et and rapio to snatch rapui, sapio to savour or taste sapui, atque and sapivi.

Pario to bring forth dat gives peperui, concutio to shake dat gives concussi.

Denique finally, Uo fit is made ui; ut as statuo to erect statui; pluo to rain format formeth pluvi, sive or plui, sed but struo to build makes struxi, fluo to flow fluxi.

Compositum the compound verb sequitur follows simplex the simple one, sed but semper always syllaba a

syllable quam which simplex the simple verb geminat redoubles non geminatur is not doubled compôsto in the compound.

QUARTA *the fourth conjugation dat makes is in the present tense, ivi in the preterperfect ; ut as scio scis to know, scivi, monstrat tibi shews you. Excipias except venio to come dans making veni, raucio to be hoarse rausi, item also haurio to draw hausi, farcio to stuff farai, fulcio to prop fulsi, sarcio to patch sarsi, sentio to feel sensi, sepio to hedge sepsi, sancio to establish sanxi, vincio to bind vixi ; tum then tria verba three verbs formantur are formed per ui in ui, salio to leap, aperio to open, operioque and to cover ; comperio to find mutat changes rio, in ri into ri reperioque and to find ; ferio to strike atque and superbio to be proud præbent afford perfectum nullum no perfect tense.*

VERBA hæc simplicia *these simple verbs, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense, præteritique and of the perfect tense, in e into e ; damno to condemn, lacto to suckle, sacro to dedicate, fallo to deceive, arceo to drive away, tracto to handle, fatiscor to be weary, cando to burn, (vetus an old word) capto to lie in wait, jacto to throw, patior to suffer, gradiorque and to step, partio to divide, carpo to crop, patro to achieve or finish, scando to climb, sic so farcio to stuff, spargo to sprinkle.*

HÆC *these verbs, habeo to have, lateo to lie hid, salio to leap, statuo to erect, cado to fall, lædo to hurt, tango to touch, cano to sing, placeo to please, teneo to hold, sic so cædo cecidi to beat, quæro to seek, egeo to want, fateor to confess, taceo to hold one's peace, sapio to savour, rapioque and to snatch, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam*

the first vowel in i into i ; ut as, rapio to snatch, eripio to take away by force.

Sed but hæc duo these two compounds, complaceo to please, cum with perplaceo to please very much, benè servant steadily keep usum the use simplicis verbi of the simple verb.

Composita the compounds à of verbis the verbs calco to tread, salto to leap or dance, mutant change a per u a into u ; conculco to tread upon, inculco to tread in, rezulto to rebound, demonstrant shew id that tibi to you.

Composita the compounds à of claudio to shut, quatio to shake, lavo to wash, rejiciunt a cast away a : occludo to shut against, excludo to shut out, à from claudio to shut, docet teaches id this ; que and percutio to strike, excutio to strike out, à from quatio to shake ; à from lavo to wash, nata the compounds proluo to drench, diluo to wash out.

Plaudo to applaud mutat changes au into o, quod which displodo to burst monstrat tibi shews you.

SI if componas you compound hæc these verbs, ago to act, emo to buy, sedeo to sit, rego to rule, frango to break, et and capio to take, jacio to cast, lacio to allure, specio to behold, premo to press, pango to fasten, sibi mutant they change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense in i into i, nunquam never præteriti of the perfect tense : ceu as of frango to break, refringo to break open, makes refregi ; incipio to begin incepti, à of capio to take : sed but pauca let a few notentur be marked ; namque for perago to finish sequitur follows suum simplex its simple verb, que and satago to be busy ; atque and dego to live, ab from ago to act, dat makes degi, cogo to bring together coëgi ; sic so à from rego to rule, pergo to go forward, makes perrexì, quoque and surgo to rise vult will have surrexi ; mediâ syllabâ the middle syllable præsentis of the present tense ademptâ being taken away.

Ista quatuor composita *these four compound verbs à of pango to fix or fasten retinent a keep a, depango to fix in the ground, oppango to fasten against, circum-pango to fasten about, atque and repango to fasten again.*

Facio *to do* variat *changeth* nil *nothing*, nisi *unless* præposito præeunte *a preposition goes before* : olfacio *to smell out* docet *teaches* id *that*, cum *with* calfacio *to make hot*, que *and* inficio *to infect*.

Nata *the compounds à of* lego *to read*, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte *going before*, servant *keep* vocalem *the vowel* præsentis *of the present tense* ; cætera *the rest* mutant *change it* in i *into i* ; de quibus *of which* hæc *these* tantum *only*, intelligo *to understand*, diligo *to love*, negligo *to neglect*, faciunt *make* præteritum *their perfect tense* lexi ; reliqua omnia *all the rest* legi.

NUNC *now* discas *you may learn* formare *to form* supinum *the supine* ex præterito *from the perfect tense*.

Unum perfectum *one perfect tense* in bi, bibi *to drink*, vult formare *will form* bibitum.

Ci, fit *is made* ctum : ut as vici *to overcome* victum, testatur *shews*, et *and* ici *to smite* dans *making* ictum, feci *to do* factum, quoque *also* jeci *to cast* jactum.

Di, fit *is made* sum ; ut as vidi *to see* visum : quædam *some* geminant s *double s* ; ut as pandi *to open* passum, sedi *to sit* sessum, adde *add* scidi *to cut* quod *which* dat *makes* scissum, atque *and* fidi *to cleave* fissum, quoque *also* fodi *to dig* fossum.

Prima syllaba *the first syllable* non geminatur *is not doubled* ullis supinis *in any supines* : idque *and this* totondi *to clip or shear* dans *making* tonsum, docet *shews*, atque *and* cecidi *to beat*, quod *which* maketh cæsum, et *and* cecidi *to fall*, quod *which* dat *maketh* casum, atque *and* tetendi *to bend*, quod *which* maketh tensum, et *also* tentum, tutudi *to beat or pound* tunsum,

atque *and* dedi *to give*, quod *which* jure *by right* poscit *requires* datum, sic *so* quot *as many as* nascuntur *are derived* ab illo *from it*, ut *as* addidi *to add* habet *has* additum; atque *and* momordi *to bite* vult *will have* morsum.

Gi, fit *is made* ctum : ut *as* legi *to read* lectum ; pegi *to fasten* que *and* pepigi *to covenant* dant *make* pactum, fregi *to break*, fractum, quoque *also* tetigi *to touch* tactum, egi *to act* actum, pupugi *to prick* punctum ; fugi *to flee* dat *makes* fugitum.

Li, fit *becomes* sum : ut *as* pepuli *to drive away* pulsum ; sic *so* rite *regularly* fefelli *to deceive* falsum, perculi *to strike* habet *has* perculsum, neve *and let not* tuli *to bear* aufugiat *te escape* you cui *in the case of* which word latum, semper *always* venit *has come* in usum *into use*.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, sumunt *take* tum, velut *as* manifestum *is manifest* hic *here* : emi *to buy* emptum, veni *to come* ventum, cecini, à *from* cano *to sing* cantum, cepi, à *from* capio *to take* captum, quoque *also* coepi *to begin* coeptum, rupi, à *from* rumpo *to break* ruptum ; quoque *also* liqui *to leave* lictum.

Ri, fit *is made* sum : ut *as* verri *to brush* versum ; excipe *except* peperi *to bring forth* young partum.

Si, fit *is made* sum : ut *as* visi *to go to see* visum ; quin *moreover* misi *to send* formabit *will form* missum, ss *geminato s being doubled* ; excipe *except* fulsi *to prop* fultum, hausi *to draw* haustum, sarsi *to patch* sartum, quoque *also* farsi *to stuff* fartum, ussi *to burn* ustum, gessi *to bear* gestum ; torsi *to wreath* vindicat *sibi claims for itself* tortum, sic *so* indulsi *to indulge* format *tibi forms as you see* indultum.

Psi, fit *is made* ptum : ut *as* scripsi *to write* scriptum, quoque *also* sculpsi *to engrave* sculptum.

Ti, vult *formare* *will form* sum : ut *as* verti *to turn* versum ; cum *when* -stiti habet *has* supinum *a supine* erit

it will be -statum, sed but vix valebis you will scarcely be able reperire to find it.

Vi, fit is made tum : ut as flavi to blow flatum : excipe except pavi to feed cattle pastum ; lavi to wash dat makes lotum, interdum sometimes lautum, atque and lavatum ; potavi to drink facit makes potum, venivi a from veneo to be sold venum ; favi to favour dat makes fautum, cavi to beware cautum : à from sero sevi to sow ritè formes you may rightly form satum ; disce learn, sepelivi to bury sepultum, et and singultivi to sob semper habebit will always have singultum ; solvi, à from solvo to loose solutum, volvi, à from volvo to roll volutum.

Quod a verb that dat makes ui, dat makes itum ; ut as domui to tame domitum : excipe except quodvis verbum every verb in uo, quia because semper formabit it will always form ui in utum ui in utum ; ut as exui to put off exutum : deme except rui, à from ruo to rush, dans making ruitum ; secui to cut vult will have sectum, necui to slay nectum, que and fricui to rub frictum, item also miscui to mingle mistum, quoque also docui to teach doctum ; torrui to roast habet hath tostum, adjiceque and add continui to contain contentum, consului to consult consultum, alui to feed altum, que and alitum ; sic so salui to leap saltum colui to till quoque also occului to hide, cultum ; pinsui to pound or grind habet hath pistum, rapui to snatch raptum, que and serui, à from sero to set in order, vult will have sertum, sic so quoque also texui to weave habet hath textum.

Censui to judge habet hath censum, messui to reap habebit will have quoque also messum ; item also nexui to knit nexum, sic so quoque also pexui to comb habet hath pexum.

Xi, fit is made ctum : ut as vinxi to bind vinctum : quædam some abjiciunt n cast away n ; ut as finxi to form or fashion semper dabit will always give fictum, adjice add pinxi to paint dans giving pictum, strinxi to bind fast strictum, quoque also rinxi to grin rictum.

Flexi to bend, plexi to twist, fixi to fasten, dant make xum ; et and fluo to flow fluxum.

QUODQUE compositum supinum every compound supine formatur is formed ut as simplex the simple supine, quamvis although eadem syllaba the same syllable non stet does not continue semper always utrique to them both. Composita the compounds à of tunsum to pound, n demptâ by taking away n, make tusum ; à of ruitum to rush, i mediâ the middle letter i demptâ being taken away, fit is made rutum ; et and quoque also à of saltum to leap sultum. Composita the compounds à of sero to sow, quando when format it forms satum, dant make situm.

Hæc these supines, captum to take, factum to do, jactum to cast, raptum to snatch, mutant a per e change a into e ; et and cantum to sing, partum to bring forth young, sparsum to sprinkle, carptum to crop, adjice add fartum to stuff.

A from nosco to know duo these two compounds tantum only, cognitum to know et and agnitum to know again, habentur are found ; cætera the rest dant make notum : noscitum, jam now est is nullo in usu not in use.

VERBA in or verbs ending in or admittunt take præteritum their perfect tense ex posteriore supino from the latter supine, u verso u being turned per us into us, et and sum, vel or fui, consociato being added ; ut as à of lectu to be read lectus sum, vel or fui, I have been read : at but horum of these verbs nunc sometimes est there is deponens a deponent, nunc sometimes est there is commune a common notandum to be noted.

Nam for labor to slide dat makes lapsus ; patior to suffer passus, et and ejus natum its compound perpetior to endure, formans forming perpessus ; fateorque and to own dat makes fassus, confiteor to confess confessus, gradiorque and to step dat makes gressus, metior to measure dat gives mensus sum, et and utor to use usus.

Ordior, pro *for* *texo* to *weave* dat *makes* orditus, pro *for* *incepto* to *begin* orsus, nitor to *strive* nisus, vel or nixus sum, et *and* ulciscor to *revenge* ultus, simul also irascor to *be angry* iratus, atque *and* reor to *suppose* ratus sum, obliviscor to *forget* vult *will have* oblitus sum, fruor to *enjoy* optat *chooseth* fructus, vel or fructus; jungo add misereri to *have pity* misertus, atque *and* miseritus; a *from* tuor to *see* et *and* tueor to *defend* tutus, tuitusque *and* tuitus; adde add locutus, à of loquor to *speak*, et *and* adde add secutus, à of sequor to *follow*.

Experior to *try* facit *maketh* expertus; paciscor to *make a bargain* gaudet *will formare* form pactus sum, nanciscor to *get* nactus, apiscor to *obtain*, (quod *which* est is *vetus verbum an old verb*) aptus sum, undè *from whence* adipiscor to *get* adeptus.

Jungo add queror to *complain* questus, jungo add proficiscor to *go* profectus, expergiscor to *awake* experrectus sum; et *and* quoque also hæc *these*, comminiscor to *devise* commentus, nascor to *be born* natus, moriorque *and* to *die* mortuus, atque *and* orior to *rise*, quod *which* facit *makes* præteritum *its* perfect tense ortus.

Medeor to *remedy*, vescor to *feed upon*, liquorque *and* to *melt* carebunt *will want* perfecto *the* perfect tense; sic quoque *so* also diffiteor to *disown*, sic *so* ringor to *grin*, sic *so* reminiscor to *remember*.

HÆC *these* verbs habent *have* præteritum a perfect tense activæ of *the* active et *and* passivæ vocis of *the* passive voice.

Nubo to *be married* nupsi, que *and* nupta sum, placeo to *please* dat *gives* placui et *and* placitus, et *and* libet it *pleaseth* libuit libitum, et *and* adde add licet it is *lawful*, quod *which* *makes* licuit licitum; tædet it *wearieth*, quod *which* dat *makes* tædui, et *and* pertæsum; adde add pudet it *shameth* faciens *making* puduit, que *and* puditum, atque *and* piget it *grieveth*, quod *which* tibi *format* forms you piguit, que *and* pigitum.

HÆC verba *these verbs* rarè *seldom* aut or *never* nunquam *never* retinebunt *will have* supinum *their supine*: lambo *to lick*, mico micui *to glitter*, rudo *to bray as an ass*, scabo *to claw*, parco peperci *to spare*, dispesco *to drive from pasture*, posco *to require*, compesco *to restrain*, atque and *advice add* disco *to learn*, dego *to live*, ango *to throttle*, sugo *to suck*, lingo *to lick*, ningo *to snow*, que and *satago to be busy*, psallo *to play on an instrument*, volo *to be willing*, nolo *to be unwilling*, malo *to be more willing*, tremo *to tremble*, strideo strido *to scream*, flaveo *to be yellow*, liveo *to be black and blue*, avet *to covet*, paveo *to dread*, conniveo *to wink*, fervet *to be hot*. Compositum a compound à of nuo *to nod*; ut as, renuo *to refuse*: à of cado *to fall*; ut as, accido *to happen*; præter except occido *to fall down*, quod which facit makes occasum, que and recido *to fall back* recasum: respuo *to refuse*, sic so metuo *to fear*, cluo *to shine or to be famous*, frigeo *to be cold*, calveo *to be bald*, sterto *to snore*, sic etiam so also timeo *to fear*; sic so luceo *to shine*, et and arceo *to drive away*, cujus composita whose compounds habent have -ercitum; sic so nata the compounds à of gruo *to cry like a crane*, ut as ingruo *to invade*; et and quæcunque neutra whatever neuters secundæ of the second conjugation formantur are formed in ui: excipias you may except oleo *to smell*, doleo *to be in pain*, placeo *to please*, que and taceo *to hold one's peace*, pareo *to obey*, item also careo *to want*, noceo *to hurt*, jaceo *to lie down*, que and lateo *to lie hid*, et also valeo *to be in health*, caleo *to be hot*; namque for .hæc *these verbs* gaudent supino have their supines.

SYNTAXIS CONSTRUED.

VERBUM personale *a verb personal* concordat *agrees* cum nominativo *with its nominative case* numero in *number* et *and* personâ *person* : ut *as*, Ego loquor *I speak*. Homines *men* audiunt *hear*.

Nominativus *the nominative case* pronominum *of pronouns* omittitur *is omitted*, nisi *unless* gratiâ *for the sake* distinctionis *of distinction*, aut *or* emphasis *energy* of expression : ut *as*, Ego *I* ejeci *drove out* reges *kings*, vos *ye* introducitis *are introducing* tyrannos *tyrants*. Auditis *do ye hear*, an *or* amabilis *insania* does a *pleasing delusion* ludit *me deceive* me? Videor *I seem* audire *to hear* et *and* errare *to be wandering* per *among* pios lucos *holy groves*. Possunt *they are able* quia *because* videntur *they seem to themselves* posse *to be able*.

Aliquando *sometimes* verbum *a verb* infinitivi *modi* of the infinitive mood usurpatur *is used* pro nominativo *for the nominative* vel *or* pro *for* accusativo casu *the accusative case* nominis *of a noun* ; ut *as*, Didicisse *to have learnt* ingenuas artes *the liberal sciences* fideliter *thoroughly* emollit *softens* much mores *men's* manners, nec *sinit* and suffers them not esse *to be* feros *brutal*. Quod crimen *what crime* dicis *do you say* meum *is mine*, præter *except* amâsse *to have loved*?

Cum *when* duo sunt nomina *there are two nouns* diversarum personarum *of different persons*, verbum *the verb*, concordat *agrees* cum *with* personâ digniore *the more worthy person* ; ut *as*, Si *if* tu *you* et *and* Julia valetis *are well* ego *I* et *and* suavissimus Cicero *our dearest Cicero* valemus *are well*.

Cum *when* unum verbum *one verb* sequitur *follows* duo aut plura nomina *two or more nouns* singularis numeri *of the singular number*, plerumque usually ponitur *it is put* in plurali *in the plural* si *if* agitur *one is speaking* de animantibus *of living objects*, si *if* de rebus *one is speaking of things*, vel *in plurali* the verb is put

either in the plural vel in singulari or in the singular ; ut as, Castor et and Pollux visi sunt were seen pugnare to fight ex equis on horseback apud Regillum at lake Regillus. Cum when tempus the occasion necessitasque and necessity postulat requires, decertandum est one must fight manu with one's own hand. Beneficium kindness et and gratia gratitude conjungunt join homines men inter se together.

Cum when nomen a noun singularis numeri of the singular number indicat denotes multitudinem a multitude, sæpe jungitur it is often joined verbo plurali to a plural verb ; ut as, Turba the crowd tenent occupy atria the halls, leve vulgus the fickle mob veniunt come euntque and go. Uterque eorum each of them educunt draw out exercitum their army e castris from the camp.

Sic so et also adverbium the adverb partim partly aliquando sometimes usurpatur is used cum with genitivo plurali nominis the genitive plural of the noun, ceu as nomen ipsum the noun itself ; ut as, Partim eorum part of them sunt are timidi cowardly, partim part aversi disaffected a republicâ to the republic. Partim eorum part of these things ficta sunt aperte were openly invented, partim part effutita uttered temere at random.

Verbum a verb positum placed inter between duos nominativos two nominative cases ejusdem personæ of the same person sed but diversorum numerorum of different numbers potest concordare may agree cum with alterutro either, sed but fere usually concordat does agree cum posteriore with the latter ; ut as, Iræ the quarrels amantium of lovers integratio est are the renewing amoris of love. Pectus quoque her breast also fiunt robora becomes oak. Omnia everything pontus erant was sea.

Pro nominativo instead of a nominative case accusativus an accusative sequitur follows verba verbs dicendi of saying, audiendi of hearing, sciendi of knowing, putandi of thinking, et similia and the like, et verbum sum and the verb sum, verbo infinitivo a verb in the infinitive mood sequente following ; ut as, Audivit he heard nos

that we venire were coming. Scribit he writes word bellum that the war confectum esse is finished. Fama est a report exists Enceladum that Enceladus urgeri is overwhelmed mole hâc by this mass.

(a.) Infinitivus modus *the infinitive mood* futuri temporis *of the future tense* plerumque generally sequitur follows verba verbs sperandi *of hoping* et and promittendi *of promising*; ut as, Promitto *I promise* me that I observaturum esse *will observe* hæc *these things*. Spero *I hope* fore ut contingat id *that that will happen* nobis *to us*.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives*, participia *participles*, et and pronomina *pronouns*, concordant agree cum with substantivo *the substantive* genere in gender, numero in number, et and casu in case; ut as, Rara avis *an uncommon bird* in terris *in the world*, simillimaque and very much like nigro cygno *a black swan*.

Cum *when* verbum *a verb* infinitivi modi *of the infinitive mood*, aut or pars sententiæ *part of a sentence* usurpatur is used pro substantivo *instead of a substantive*, habetur it is considered neutrius generis *of the neuter gender*; ut as, Irasci *to be angry* est *is* humanum *a human error*.

Cum *when* plura sunt substantiva *there are many substantives* diversorum generum *of different genders*, adjectivum *the adjective* concordat agrees cum with digniore genere *the more worthy gender*, si if agitur *one is speaking* de animantibus *of living objects*, et and si if ponitur *it is put* in numero plurali *in the plural number*; ut as, Pater *my father* et mater *and mother* mortui sunt mihi *have been dead* jampridem *long since*.

Si vero *but if* agitur de rebus *things are spoken of*, adjectivum *the adjective* sæpe ponitur *is often put* in neutro *in the neuter gender*; ut as, Secundæ res *prosperity*, honores *honours*, imperia *commands*, victoriæ *victories* fortuita sunt *depend on chance*.

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* adjectivum *the adjective* concordat agrees cum proximo substantivo *with the nearest substantive* cujuscunque generis sit *of whatever gender it is*, præsertim *especially* cum *when* ponitur *it is put*

in singulari numero *in the singular number* ; ut *as*, Animus *the intention*, et *and* consilium *the purpose*, et *and* sententia *the opinion* civitatis *of the state* posita est *has been expressed in legibus in the laws*.

Aliquando *sometimes* adjectivum *the adjective* concordat *agrees* cum substantivo *with a substantive* quod *which* significatur *is implied*, non cum eo *not with that* quod *which* exprimitur *is expressed* ; ut *as*, Auxilia Thracum *the auxiliary force of the Thracians*, cum *as* pars *part* adjacerent *lay close* munitionibus *to the fortifications*, cæsi sunt *were slain*.

Aliquando *sometimes* nullum substantivum *no substantive* exprimitur *is expressed*, sed *but* adjectivum *the adjective* usurpatur *is used* pro substantivo *for a substantive* ; ut *us*, Loquor *I am saying* mira *strange* things ; multi *many* men libenter *willingly* oppetierunt *have sought* mortem *death* pro patria *for their country*.

RELATIVUM *the relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* antecedente *the antecedent* genere *in gender*, numero *in number*, et *and* personâ *in person* ; ut *as*, Ego *I* sum *am* ille consul *that consul* qui *who* servavi *saved* Romam *Rome*. Contemnimus *we* despise hominem *a man* qui *who* amat *loves* mendacia *lies*.

Quoniam *since* relativum *the relative* adjectivum *est is an adjective*, sequitur *it follows* easdem *leges the same laws* de genere *as to gender* quas *as* adjectivum *an adjective* ; ut *as*, Eæ fruges *these crops* atque fructus *and fruits* quos *which* terra *the earth* gignit *produces*. Duo importuna prodigia *the two prodigies of wickedness* quos *whom* improbitas *their profligacy* addixerat *had bound* tribuno plebis *to the tribune of the people*. Ubi *est where* is illud scelus *that wicked man* qui *who* perdidit *me* *has undone me* ?

Aliquando *sometimes* sententia *a sentence* aut *or* pars sententiæ *part of a sentence* ponitur *is put* pro *for* antecedente *an antecedent* ; ut *as*, Veni *I came* ad eam *to her* in tempore *in season*, quod *which* est *is* rerum omnium *the main business of all*.

Relativum a relative collocatum placed inter between duo substantiva *two substantives* diversorum generum *of different genders* et *and* numerorum *numbers* concordat *agrees* interdum *sometimes* cum *with* posteriore *the latter* substantive; ut *as*, Homines *men* tuentur *regard* illum globum *that globe* quæ *which* dicitur *is called* terra *the earth*.

Relativum the relative sæpe ponitur is often put Latinè in *Latin* ubi *where* in nostro sermone in *our language* utimur *we use* pronomine a *pronoun* cum conjunctione *with a conjunction*; ut *as*, Si *if* pater *O father* scisses *you had known* hoc *this*, cujus pietatis *es such is your piety*, nemo *no one* antecessisset *te would have outdone you*. Et tamen *and yet*, quæ jam patientia nostra *est so great is our patience*, spernimur *we are despised* in cœlo *in heaven*. Pater tuus si viveret *if your father were alive*, quâ severitate fuit *such was his severity*, tu profecto *you in truth* non viveres *would not be alive*. Jussit hoc *he ordered this*, quod si fecissem *but if I had done it* perdidissem *I should have ruined* omnia *every thing*.

Aliquando *sometimes* relativum a *relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* primitivo *the primitive*, quod *which* subauditur *is understood* in possessivo *in the possessive*; ut *as*, Hoc *this* maxime interest vestrâ *is of the greatest consequence to you*, qui *who* vixistis *have lived* cum summâ integritate *with the greatest integrity*.

(a.) Cum *when* relativum *the relative* refertur *is referred* ad nomen *to a noun* multitudinis *of multitude*, aliquando *sometimes* ponitur *it is put* in plurali *in the plural*; ut *as*, Cæsar *Cæsar* præmittit *sends on* omnem equitatum *all the cavalry*, qui videant *to see* quas in partes *in which direction* hostes *the enemy* iter faciant *is marching*.

Si *if* nominativus a *nominative case* interponatur *is put* between relativo *the relative* et *and* verbo *the verb*, relativum *the relative* regitur *is governed* à verbo *by the verb*, aut *or* ab aliâ dictione *by some other word* quæ

which locatur is placed in oratione in the sentence cum verbo with the verb; ut as, Peto I demand te you quem whom merui I have deserved. Cujus numen whose deity adoro I adore.

(a.) Cum when relativum the relative adjungitur is joined superlativo to an adjective in the superlative degree, superlativum the superlative ponitur is put in eodem sententiæ membro in the same member of the sentence quo as relativum the relative; ut as, Themistocles Themistocles misit sent servum quem fidelissimum habuit the most faithful slave he had ad Xerxem to Xerxes.

DUO substantiva two substantives rei ejusdem meaning the same thing ponuntur are put in eodem casu in the same case; ut as, Opes riches effodiuntur are dug up, irritamenta the incentives malorum to evil.

Quum when duo substantiva two substantives diversæ significationis of a different signification concurrunt meet together, posterius the latter ponitur is put in genitivo in the genitive case; ut as, Amor the love nummi of money crescit increases quantum as much as ipsa pecunia the money itself crescit increases.

Adjectivum an adjective in neutro genere of the neuter gender positum put pro substantivo instead of a substantive, postulat requires genitivum a genitive case; ut as, Dedi I wrote hoc literarum this letter ad te to you. Venerant they had come ad extremum to the extremity inopiæ of want. Ferimur we are borne on per opaca locorum through shady places.

Interdum sometimes genitivus a genitive case ponitur tantum is set alone, priore substantivo the former substantive subaudito being understood per ellipsin by the figure ellipsis; ut as, Ventum erat we had come ad Vestæ to the temple of Vesta. Hasdrubal Hasdrubal Girgonis the son of Girgo.

Substantivum a substantive denotans denoting qualitatem quality, adjuncto adjectivo if an adjective be added, ponitur is put in genitivo in the genitive vel or in ablativo

in the ablative ; ut as, Titus Titus fuit was tantæ facilitatis of such great kindness, ut that negaret quicquam nemini he never denied anything to any one. Agesilaus Agesilaus fuit was staturâ humili of low stature et corpore exiguo and of a slight body.

(a.) Substantiva *substantives* derivata a verbis *derived from verbs* interdum *sometimes* admittunt *admit* eosdem casus *the same cases* post se *after them* quos *as* verba *the verbs* exigunt *require* a quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived ; ut as, Spe all hope reditiois of a return domum home sublatâ being taken away. Justitia justice est is obtemperatio obedience scriptis legibus to written laws.*

Opus *need et and* usus *need* exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case ; ut as, Opus est nobis we have need auctoritate tuâ of your authority. Non accepit he would not receive pecuniam money ab iis from them, quâ of which sibi esset he had nihil usus no need.*

Autem *but* opus, videtur *seems* quandoque *sometimes* poni *to be put* adjectivè *adjectively* pro *for* necessarius *necessary ; ut as, Dux a leader et and auctor an adviser est is opus necessary nobis for us.*

ADJECTIVA *adjectives* vel *or* participia *participles* posita *put* pro adjectivis *for adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* cupidinem *desire*, scientiam *knowledge*, memoriam *memory*, timorem *fear*, diligentiam *diligence*, participationem *participation*, atque *and* contraria *the contraries* iis *to these*, cum plurimis aliis *with many others* quæ *which* denotant *denote* qualitatem *a quality* vel motum aliquem *or some passion* animi *of the mind*, exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case ; ut as, Pythagoras Pythagoras appellavit called studiosos those who were fond sapientiæ of wisdom philosophos philosophers. Mens a mind conscia recti conscious of rectitude ridet laughs at mendacia the lies famæ of rumour. Estote be ye jam nunc even now memores mindful venturæ senectæ of coming old age. Mens hominum the mind of*

man nescia ignorant fati of fate sortisque futuræ and his future lot. Romani the Romans fuerunt were appetentes eager after gloriæ glory præter beyond cæteras gentes all other nations. Serpit he creeps humi on the ground cautus nimium too cautious timidusque and afraid procellæ of a storm. Vir a man diligentissimus most diligent in omnis officii every duty. Cæteræ the others possunt can habere have domi at home participem one who shares omnium fortunarum all their fortunes. Sæpe often anus an old woman potens voti having gained her wish redit returns.

Ex his of these particeps sharing in interdum sometimes jungitur is joined dativo to a dative case personæ of the person; ut as, Mater the mother particeps marito sharing with her husband in plerisque operibus in most of the toils ruris of the country.

Conscius conscious postulat requires genitivum a genitive case rei of the thing, dativum a dative personæ of the person, interdum sometimes etiam even jungitur it is joined dativo to a dative rei of the thing, personæ the person subauditâ being understood; ut as, Conscius sibi conscious to himself tanti sceleris of such great wickedness. Mens tua your mind non debuit esse ought not to have been conscia an accomplice in huic facinori tanto this enormous wickedness.

Adjectiva adjectives quæ which significant signify copiam plenty egestatemve or want exigunt require genitivum a genitive case, interdum sometimes etiam also ablativum an ablative; ut as, Dives rich eqûum in horses, dives rich pictai vestis in embroidered garments, et and auri gold. Dives rich agris in lands, dives rich nummis in money positis in fœnore laid out at usury. Non indiga not in need of opis nostræ our aid. Omnia everything plena sunt is full errorum of blunders. Animus humanus the human mind est is expers free utriusque from each harum rerum of these things.

Adjectiva adjectives quæ which significant signify liberalitatem liberality, vel or contrarium the contrary,

exigunt require genitivum a genitive case ; ut as, Liberalis liberal pecuniæ of his money. Non parcus not sparing veteris aceti of his old vinegar.

Proprius peculiar to, superstes surviving, communis common, cum with paucis aliis a few others admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case, interdum etiam sometimes also dativum a dative ; ut as, Libertas liberty est is propria peculiar to populi Romani the Roman people. Sumus superstites we have survived aliorum the others. Hoc this commune est is common cupidorum potentiæ to those desirous of power cum otiosis with the indolent. Pomponius Pomponius superstes fuit survived Tiberio Tiberius.

(a.) Communis vero but communis nunquam jungitur is never joined pronomini personali to a personal pronoun, nisi except dativo in the dative ; ut as, Hoc this commune est is common mihi to me tecum with you. Alienus foreign to jungitur is joined to genitivo a genitive case, vel or dativo to a dative, vel or ablativo to an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition ; ut as, Censet he thinks hoc this alienum esse to be inconsistent with suæ dignitatis his dignity. Alienus averse ambitioni to ambition. Fraus deceit alienissima est is very foreign homine to the nature of man. Non alienus not averse a studiis to the studies Scævolæ of Scævola.

Adjectiva adjectives quæ which significant signify crimen crime vel or contrarium the contrary junguntur are joined genitivo to a genitive case ; ut as, Regulus Regulus trahebat ad disquisitionem brought to examination collegam his colleague, ut as noxium guilty conjuratæ of the conspiracy. Integer innocent vitæ in life, purusque and free sceleris from wickedness.

Adjectiva adjectives verbalia derived from verbs in ax ax exigunt require genitivum a genitive case ; ut s time edax is the consumer rerum of all things. a partitiva partitive adjectives, numeralia of number, comparativa comparatives et and

superlativa superlatives, et also adjectiva adjectives posita put partitivè partitively, exigunt require genitivum a genitive case ; ut as, Accipe take utrum horum which of these two mavis you had rather. Romulus, fuit was primus the first Romanorum regum of the Roman kings. Dextra the right est is fortior the stronger manuum of the hands. Medius the middle est is longissimus the longest digitorum of the fingers. Sancte deorum O sacred deity! sequimur we follow te you.

Usurpantur they are used et also cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, de of, ex of, in among, inter among ; ut as, Nam for alter one e vobis of you es Deus is a God, alter the other eris will be. Thales Thales fuit was sapientissimus the wisest in septem of the seven. Solus the only one de Superis of the Gods qui who vides see tua terga your own back. Inter mille rates among the thousand ships tua puppis let your vessel be millesima the thousandth.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives quibus whereby commodum advantage, similitudo likeness, aut iis similia or anything like them aut contraria or contrary to them, aut or relatio relation ad aliquid to any thing significatur is signified, postulant require dativum a dative case ; ut as, Si if facis you take care ut that sit he be idoneus serviceable patriæ to his country, utilis useful agris to the lands. Turba a multitude gravis troublesome paci to peace, que and inimica averse placidæ quieti to gentle ease. Similis like patri his father. Virtus virtue fructuosa full of profit aliis to others, laboriosa full of toil ipsi for himself. Color the colour qui which erat was albus white est is nunc now contrarius contrary albo to white. Socrates Socrates non fuit supplex did not use entreaty iudicibus to the judges. Carus dear Dîs ipsis to the Gods themselves. Poëta a poet est is finitimus very near akin oratori to an orator.*

Quædam some ex his of these adjectives, quæ which significant signify similitudinem likeness, et and adjec-

tivum the adjective *affinis* connected with, *junguntur* are joined etiam also genitivo to a genitive case ; ut as, *Qui those who faciunt think mortem death levioerem less momentous, volunt insist esse that it is simillimam very like somni sleep. Affinis connected with hujus culpæ this crime.*

Natus born, *habilis* suitable, *commodus* convenient, *utilis* useful, *aptus* fit, cum quibusdam aliis with some others, *junguntur* are joined etiam also accusativo to an accusative case cum with præpositione a preposition ; ut as, *Natus* born ad gloriam for glory. *Utilis* profitable ad eam rem to that business.

Verbalia adjectives derived from verbs in *bilis* ending in *bilis* accepta taken passivè passively, postulant require dativum a dative case ; ut as, *Lucus* iners a thick grove *penetrabilis* penetrable *nulli* astro by no star.

Participia participles passivæ vocis of the passive voice postulant require dativum a dative case vel or ablativum an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition ; ut as, *Mæcenas* O *Mæcenas* dicte celebrated mihi by me primâ Camænâ in my first poem, dicende to be celebrated summâ in my last. *Senex* the old man dictus sapiens called wise ab Apolline by Apollo.

ADJECTIVA adjectives significantia signifying magnitudinem magnitude exigunt require accusativum an accusative case ; ut as, *Fossa* a ditch undecim pedes lata eleven feet wide.

Natus born cum when refertur it refers ad durationem temporis to the duration of time exigit requires accusativum an accusative case ; ut as, *Undeviginti annos* natus nineteen years old.

Accusativus an accusative case sæpe often a poetis subjicitur is put by poets after adjectivis adjectives et and participiis participles passivæ vocis of the passive voice, præsertim especially cum when pars affecta the part affected indicatur is indicated ; ut as, *Similis Deo* like a God os as to his face humerosque and shoulders. *Flor-es* flowers inscripti inscribed with nomina the names

regum of kings. Stratus prostrate membra as to one's limbs nunc at one time viridi sub arbuto under a green arbutus.

Accusativus an accusative case sæpe often usurpatur is used in exclamationibus in exclamations, interjectione aliquâ some interjection subauditâ being understood a quâ by which revera regitur it is in reality governed; ut as, Me cæcum blind that I am qui non viderim not to have seen hæc this ante before.

ADJECTIVA adjectives regunt govern ablativum an ablative case significantem signifying causam the cause, aut or formam the form, vel or modum the manner rei of a thing; ut as, Par est he is equal illi to him scelere in wickedness, inferior inferior industriâ in energy. Cæsar, Trojanus a Trojan origiñe by descent.

Dignus worthy, indignus unworthy, præditus endued, contentus content, extorris banished, fretus relying upon, cum with adjectivis adjectives significantibus signifying pretium price, exigunt require ablativum an ablative case; ut as, Es you are dignus worthy odio of hatred. Mens the mind prædita est is endued motu sempiterno with perpetual motion. Abi go your way contentus contented sorte tuâ with your lot. Extorris banished from agro Romano the Roman territory. Otium ease venale to be purchased gemmis with jewels nec nor auro with gold. Quod non opus est what is not necessary carum est is dear asse at a penny.

(a.) Nonnulla some horum of these admittunt admit interdum sometimes poetice in poetry genitivum a genitive case; ut as, Indignus unworthy magnorum avorum of my great ancestors. Carmina verses digna worthy of deæ a goddess. Extorris banished regni the kingdom.

(b.) Fretus relying upon interdum sometimes sed but raro seldom jungitur is joined dativo to a dative case; ut as, Multitudo hostium the multitude of the enemy freta fuit relied nulli rei on nothing præter quam numero except their numbers.

Natus satus, cretus ortus, editus, born of, exigunt.

require ablativum an ablative case, et and sæpe often eum præpositione with a preposition ; ut as, Nate o you born Deâ of a goddess. Sate o man sprung from sanguine the blood Divûm of the Gods. Hortamur we encourage him fari to tell quo sanguine of what race cretus he is sprung. Venus Venus orta mari born of the sea præstat mare makes the sea safe eunti for the voyager. Nympha I a nymph edita born de magno flumine of a mighty river contenta fui was content te with you marito for my husband.

Ablativus rei an ablative case of the thing ad quam to which comparatio comparison fiat is made subicitur is put after comparativis adjectives in the comparative degree, vel or else utraque res comparata each of the things which are compared together ponitur is put in eodem casu in the same case, conjunctione quam the conjunction quam than interpositâ being inserted ; ut as, Argentum silver est is vilis of less value auro than gold, aurum gold virtutibus than virtue. Certa pax certain peace melior est is better tutiorque and safer quam than sperata victoria a victory hoped for.

Cum when duo adjectiva two adjectives vel or adverbia adverbs comparantur inter se are compared together, et and conjunguntur are connected per quàm by quàm, ambo both fere ponuntur are usually put in comparativo in the comparative degree ; ut as, Concio the speech Publî Æmilii of Publius Æmilius fuit verior quam gratior was true rather than pleasing populo to the people. Non timeo I am not afraid ne lest videar I should seem evomere hæc to pour forth these things in illum against him libentius quam verius with more eagerness than truth.

Post after minus less, plus, amplius more, et and longius farther, quàm than interdum sometimes omittitur is omitted, nihilominus nevertheless substantivum the substantive quod sequitur which follows non ponitur is not put in ablativo in the ablative case ; ut as, Si if vos ye hodie to-day feceritis make minus less decem plebis tribunos than ten tribunes of the people. Cum when æger fuisset he had been sick plus annum more than a

year. Dixit he said copias that the troops Gallorum of the Gauls abfuisse were absent ab hybernis suis from his winter quarters non longius not further millia passuum octo than eight miles.

Aliquando sometimes quam pro, cum substantivo with a substantive, quam qui, vel or quam ut, cum verbo with a verb, subjiciuntur are put after comparativis adjectives in the comparative degree; ut as, Proelium a battle editur takes place atrocius more violent quam pro numero than one would expect from the number pugnantium of the combatants. Major sum I am too great quam cui fortuna possit nocere for fortune to be able to injure me. Flumen the river latius erat was too wide quam ut tranare possent for them to be able to swim across.

MEI of me, tui of thee or you, sui of himself, nostri of us, vestri of you, genitivi the genitive cases primitivorum of their primitives, ponuntur are used cum when persona a person significatur is signified; ut as, Languet she languishes desiderio tui for want of you. Parsque and part tui of you lateat may lie clausa shut up corpore meo in my body. Imago nostri the picture of our person.

Meus mine, tuus thine, suus his own, noster ours, vester yours, ponuntur are used cum when actio action vel or possessio the possession rei of a thing significatur is signified; ut as, Favet he favours desiderio tuo your desire. Imago nostra our picture, (id est that is, quam which nos we possidemus do possess.)

Pronomina possessiva possessive pronouns interdum sometimes recipiunt take post se after them hos genitivos these genitive cases, ipsius of himself, solius of him alone, unius of one, omnium of all, plurium of more, paucorum of few, cujusque of every one; et and also genitivos the genitive cases participiorum of participles, qui which referuntur are referred ad primitivum to a primitive subauditum understood; ut as, Dixi I affirmed

republicam that the state esse salvam was preserved
meâ unius operâ by my single service. Meum solius
peccatum my offence alone non potest cannot corrigi be
amended. Cùm whereas nemo nobody legat reads scripta
mea timentis the writings of me fearing recitare to rehearse
them vulgò publicly. Ceperis conjecturam you may
guess de studio tuo ipsius by your own study. Præstantior
more excellent in suâ cujusque laude each in his own
skill. Nostrâ omnium memoriâ in the memory of us all.
Respondet he answers vestris paucorum laudibus the
praises of you few.

Sui of himself et and suus his own sunt are reciproca
reciprocals ; id est that is, reflectuntur they have relation
semper always ad id to that quod which præcessit went
before præcipuum most to be noted in sententiâ in the
sentence ; ut as, Animus the mind sentit feels se that it
moveri is moved vi suâ by its own power non alienâ not
by that of any thing else. Pater my father oravit me
begged me ut venirem to come ad se to him.

Hæc demonstrativa these pronouns demonstrative, hic,
iste, ille, is, distinguuntur are distinguished sic thus ; hic,
demonstrat points to proximum the nearest mihi to me ;
iste, eum him qui who est is apud te by you ; ille, eum
him qui who est is remotus at a distance ab utroque from
both of us ; is, eum him de quo of whom mentio fit
mention is being made.

Cùm when hic et and ille referuntur are referred ad
duo anteposita to two things or persons going before,
hic, plerumque generally refertur is referred ad posterius
to the latter, ille, ad prius to the former ; ut as, Cæsar
Cæsar habebatur was accounted magnus great magnifi-
centiâ for his liberality, Cato Cato integritate vitæ for
the integrity of his life : Ille the former clarus factus was
illustrious mansuetudine for his merciful disposition, huic
to the latter severitas vitæ the strictness of his life addi-
derat had added dignitatem dignity.

(a.) *Nonnunquam vero but sometimes hic et and ille ha-*

bent *have mutatas vices their places changed* ; ut *as, Certa pax certain peace melior est is better tutiorque and safer quam than sperata victoria victory hoped for* ; hæc *the one est is in tuâ potestate in your own power, illa the other in Deorum in that of the Gods.*

Idem *the same sæpe often habet has vim copulativam a copulative force* ; ut *as, Nil nothing liberale est is liberal quod non idem which is not also justum just. Opëram conferunt they devote their attention in res obscuras to obscure matters, easdemque and these too non necessarias not necessary.*

VERBA substantiva *verbs substantive* ; ut *as, sum I am, fio I am made, existo I am* ; verba passiva *verbs passive vocandi of calling* ; ut *as, nominor I am named, appellor I am called, dicor I am said, vocor I am called, et and similia the like iis to them* ; ut *as, videor I am seen, habeor I am accounted, existimor I am thought* ; habent *have eosdem casus the same cases utrinque on both sides* ; ut *as, Deus God est is summum bonum the chief good. Natura nature dedit hath granted omnibus to all esse to be beatis happy. Ex nitido from a smart man fit he becomes rusticus a clown. Dicorque and I am called opifer helper per orbem all over the world. Da grant mihi to-me fallere to deceive, da grant to me videri to seem justo just sanctoque and holy.*

(a.) Item *likewise omnia verba all verbs ferè in a manner admittunt admit post se after them adjectivum an adjective, quod which concordat agrees cum with nominativo verbi the nominative case of the verb casu in case, genere gender, et and numero number* ; ut *as, Pii pious men orant pray taciti silently. Malus pastor a bad shepherd dormit sleeps supinus with his face upwards.*

SUM *I am et and fio I become* *postulant require genitivum a genitive case quoties as often as significant they signify possessionem possession, officium duty, signum*

sign, aut or id that quod which pertinet has respect ad rem quampiam to any thing; ut as, Est it is the duty adolescentis of a young man revereri to reverence majores natu his elders. Thebæ Thebes factæ sunt became populi Romani the property of the Roman people jure belli by the right of war.

Verba verbs accusandi of accusing, damnandi of condemning, absolvendi of acquitting, et and similia the like, postulant require genitivum a genitive case criminis of the accusation vel or pœnæ of the punishment, accusativum an accusative personæ of the person; ut as, Accusat he accuses alterum the other ambitûs of bribery. Insimulabant they accused eum him proditiōis of treason. Damnatus he was condemned octupli in eight-fold damages.

Hic genitivus this genitive case vertitur is changed aliquando sometimes in ablativum into an ablative, interdum sometimes (cum when de crimine agitur the accusation is spoken of) cum with præpositione de the preposition de; ut as, Si if es you are iniquus judex a partial judge in me to me, ego I condemnabo will condemn te you eodem crimine of the same crime. Non damnarer I should not be condemned capite to death ob eam rem for that matter. Restituit he restored Licinium Licinius condemnatum who had been condemned de aleâ for gambling.

(a.) Uterque both, nullus none, alter the other, neuter neither of the two, alius another, ambo both, et and adjectiva superlativa adjectives of the superlative degree, junguntur are joined verbis to verbs hujusmodi of that kind non nisi only in ablativo in the ablative case; ut as, Accusas do you accuse him furti of theft an or stupri indecency? Utroque, of both. Accusaris you are accused de plurimis of very many things simul at once.

Verba verbs miserendi of pitying postulant require genitivum a genitive case, præter except miseror to pity, qui which jungitur is joined soli accusativo to an ac-

cusative case only; ut as, Oro I pray you miserere pity laborum tantorum such great distresses; miserere pity animæ a soul ferentis suffering non digna things undeserved. O sola miserata O you who alone have pitied infandos labores the unspeakable calamities Trojæ of Troy.

Verba verbs reminiscendi of remembering et and obliviscendi of forgetting admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case, vel or accusativum an accusative; ut as, Est it is proprium the property stultitiæ of folly cernere to discern aliorum vitia other men's faults, oblivisci to forget suorum its own. Nec memini nor do I remember veterum malorum the old misfortunes lætorve nor am I glad of them. Recordabitur he will recollect flagitiorum suorum his crimes. Tu you, Caius Cæsar O Caius Cæsar, soles are wont oblivisci to forget nihil nothing nisi except injurias injuries. Juvabit it will be a pleasure olim hereafter meminisse to call to mind hæc these things. Si if recordor I recollect ritè well audita the things I heard.

Verba verbs admonendi of admonishing exigunt require genitivum rei a genitive of the thing, accusativum personæ an accusative of the person; interdum sometimes ablativum rei an ablative of the thing cum with præpositione de the preposition de, interdum sometimes geminum accusativum a double accusative; ut as, Catilina Catiline admonebat reminded alium one egestatis of his need, alium another cupiditatis suæ of his covetousness. Putavi I thought te that you admonendum esse ought to be admonished eâ de re of that matter. Unoquoque gradu at every step commonemur we are reminded de avaritiâ tuâ of your avarice. Præclare admones you do well to admonish me me illud of that.

Potior to gain or enjoy jungitur is joined aut either genitivo to a genitive case, aut or ablativo to an ablative; ut as, Romani the Romans potiti sunt gained signorum the standards et and armorum the arms. Troës the Tro-

jans egressi being landed potiuntur enjoy optatâ arenâ the wished-for shore.

OMNIA verba *all verbs* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case* ejus rei *of that thing* cujus causâ *for the sake of which* aliquid *anything* fit *is done*, aut *or* in quam *to which* actio *the action* refertur *is referred*; ut *as*, Sic *so* nullum tempus *no time* abibit vobis *will pass by to you* iners *unproductive*. Magna injuria *a great injury* facta est *was done* Laomedonti *to Laomedon*. Pisistratus *Pisistratus* vicit *conquered* Megarenses *the Megarians* sibi *for himself* non *not* patriæ *for his country*. Hoc *this* patet *is evident* omnibus *to all*. Quid *what* majus *greater* nutricula *can a nurse* voveat *pray for* dulci *dear* alumno *for her boy*? Appius Appius blanditur mihi *caresses me*. Civitas Romana *the Roman state* olim *formerly* parum vacabat *had but little* liberalibus studiis *for liberal studies*. Namque *for* est mihi *there is to me* domi *at home* pater *a father*, est *there is* injusta noverca *an unjust step-mother*. Consulite *consult* vobis *for yourselves*, prospicite *provide* patriæ *for your country*. Medici *physicians* timent *dread* noxam *the injurious qualities* vini *of wine* ægris *for invalids*.

(a.) Sed *but* delecto *to delight*, juvo *to help*, lædo *to hurt*, exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative case*; ut *as*, Arbusta *trees* non juvant *do not please* omnes *every one*.

Verba *verbs* comparandi *of comparing* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*, interdum etiam *sometimes* also accusativum *an accusative* vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositionibus *with the prepositions* inter *vel* *or* cum; ut *as*, Sic *thus* solebam *was I used* componere *to compare* magna *great things* parvis *to small*. Comparete *compare* hominem cum homine *man with man*, rem cum re *circumstance with circumstance*. Comparemus *let us compare* partes *the parts* honestatis *of honesty* inter se *with one another*.

Verba verbs dandi of giving, reddendi of restoring, et and contraria the contrary, regunt govern dativum a dative case ; ut as, Fortuna fortune dat giveth nimis too much multis to many, satis enough nulli to nobody. Quis casus what event ademit te has taken you away mihi from me? Numeravit he paid mihi to me æs alienum the debt.

Verba verbs appropinquandi of approaching, adjungendi of joining, et and contraria the contraries to them, exigunt require dativum a dative case ; ut as, Ingenuus puer the well-born boy rudis being unpractised nescit knows not how hære to stick equo to a horse. Miscibat he used to mingle mella honey forti Falerno with the strong Falernian wine. Jungit he yokes equos horses curru to the chariot. Celata virtus concealed virtue paulum distat is but little removed from sepultæ inertiae buried indolence : eripe te tear yourself moræ from delay.

(a.) Quædam ex his some of these verbs composita compounded cum with præpositione ad the preposition ad admittunt admit accusativum an accusative case cum ad with ad ; et and interdum sometimes verba verbs amovendi of removing et and distandi of being distant admittunt admit ablativum an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition, vel or (apud poetæ in the poets) sine præpositione without a preposition ; ut as, Hi these appropinquant are near summam aquam the top of the water. Fretum a strait separat separates Seston Sestos Abydenâ urbe from the city of Abydos. Mors igitur death therefore abducit nos takes us away a malis from misfortunes non not a bonis from pleasing circumstances. Narras you tell us quantum how much Codrus Codrus distet is removed ab Inacho from Inachus.

Verba verbs imperandi of commanding et contraria and the contrary, et and verba verbs dicendi of telling, regunt govern dativum a dative case ; ut as, Pecunia money

collecta *gathered up* imperat *commands* aut or servit *serves* cuique *every man*. Dic mihi *tell me* quid feci *what have I done?*

Verba *verbs* irascendi *of being angry* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*: Verba *verbs* condonandi *of pardoning* dativum *a dative personæ of the person*, accusativum *an accusative culpæ of the fault*, si *if* ambo *both* exprimuntur *are expressed*; si *if* alterum tantum *one only be expressed*, dativum *a dative*: Verba *verbs* minandi *of threatening* dativum *govern a dative personæ of the person*, accusativum *an accusative rei of the thing*; ut *as*, Nihil est *there is no reason* quod succenseam *why I should be angry* adolescenti *with the young man*. Homines *men* ignoscunt sibi omnia *forgive themselves for everything*. Minatus est *he threatened* utrique *each of them* mortem *with death*. Quæ *which things* promitto tibi *I promise you* me esse observaturum *to observe* sanctissime *most religiously*. Tempore *in time* animosus equus *the spirited horse* paret *obeys* lentis habenis *the slow reins*. Repugnavi *I opposed* omnibus ejus dictis *all his speeches*.

(a.) Excipe *except* rego *to rule*, guberno *to govern*, jubeo *to order*, quæ *which verbs* have accusativum *an accusative case*; tempero *to rule*, et *and* moderor *to rule*, quæ *which* admittunt *admit* vel *either* dativum *a dative case*, vel *or* accusativum *an accusative case*; ut *as*, Jubebo *I will command* fortem animum *my brave mind* tolerare *to endure* hoc *this*. Ille *he* regit animos *restrains their fierceness* dictis *with his words*. Hortor *I exhort* te *you* ut gubernes *to manage* omnia *everything* tuâ prudentiâ *according to your own wisdom*. Sit censor *let there be a censor* qui doceat *who may teach* viros *husbands* moderari uxoribus *to manage their wives*. Decet *it is right* moderari consilia *to direct one's counsels* non *not* voluptate *according to pleasure* sed *but* officio *duty*. Æolus *Æolus* temperat *restrains* iras *the violence* ventorum *of the winds*. Vix

temperavere they scarcely restrained animis their courage.

Verba verbs fidendi of trusting et and contraria the contrary iis to them regunt govern dativum a dative case; ut as, Decet it is fit committere to commit nil nothing nisi but lene what is soft vacuis venis to the empty veins. Diffidit he distrusts perpetuitati the continuance bonorum suorum of his good fortune.

(a.) Interdum vero but sometimes verba fidendi verbs of trusting junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative; ut as, Confidit he trusts in stabilitate the stability fortunæ of fortune.

Verba verbs composita compounded cum his adverbiiis with these adverbs, benè well, satis enough, malè ill; et and cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, ad, ante, circum, cum, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super, dis, re, fermè for the most part regunt govern dativum a dative case; ut as, Dii may the Gods benefaciant do good tibi to thee! Multitudo the multitude circumfundebatur surrounded on all sides concionanti him haranguing. Judices the judges debuerant ought constare to have been consistent sibi with themselves, et and convenire to have agreed superioribus judiciis with former decisions. Campus a plain interjacens lying between Tiberi the Tiber et and mœnibus Romanis the walls of Rome. Obstiti I opposed omnibus ejus consiliis all his plans. Ausa est she has dared postponere to postpone vos you natis suis to her own children. Præfecit Brutum he appointed Brutus to command copiis the troops. Proponite ora ipsa place his very countenance before oculis your eyes. Magnitudine animi by magnanimity potest repugnari one can resist fortunæ fortune. Superfuit he survived patri his father.

(a.) Nonnulla tamen but some ex his of these interdum sometimes regunt govern accusativum an accusative case; ut as, Alius one præstat exceeds alium another ingenio in ability. Beatum est it is a happy thing post

mortem after death convenire to meet eos those qui who vixerint have lived justè justly et and cum fide honourably.

Interdum sometimes dativus a dative case agentis of the agent subicitur is put after passivis verbis passive verbs ; interdum sometimes ablativus an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition ; ut as, Hoc this non intelligitur is not understood viventi by any one living in laboribus in labours. Laudatur he is praised ab his by the one, culpatur he is blamed ab illis by the others.

Sum, cum multis aliis with many others, admittit admits geminum dativum a double dative case, alterum one personæ of the person or object, alterum the other rei of the thing or effect ; ut as, Mare the sea est is exitio the destruction avidis nautis of greedy sailors. Reliquit he left quinque cohortes five cohorts præsidio as a protection castris to the camp. Delegerunt they chose hunc locum this place domicilio for a habitation sibi for themselves.

VERBA transitiva *verbs transitive exigunt require accusativum an accusative case ; ut as, Cano I sing arma arms virumque and the man. Non deprecor I do not deprecate mortem death, inquit said he.*

Verba neutralia verbs neuter sæpe often habent have post se after them accusativum an accusative case cognatæ significationis of a like signification ; ut as, Servit he serves duram servitutem a hard servitude. Nec nor vox does your voice sonat sound hominem like a human creature ; O Dea O a Goddess, certè doubtless.

(a.) *Verba neutralia neuter verbs aliquando etiam sometimes also regunt govern accusativum an accusative ejus rei of that thing quæ which significat signifies causam the cause ; ut as, Id succenseo I am angry about that matter tibi with you.*

Verba verbs rogandi of asking, docendi of teaching, celandi of concealing, cogendi of compelling, sæpe often regunt govern duplicem accusativum two accusative

cases ; ut as, Tu modò do but you posce ask veniam pardon Deos of the Gods. Consuefeci I have accustomed filium my son ne celet not to conceal ea these things me from me. Quid why, asine o ass, nunc te doceam literas should I now teach you letters ? Quid to what non cogis do you not drive mortalia pectora mortal hearts, sacra fames o cursed desire auri for gold ?

(a.) Sæpe etiam often also verba docendi verbs of teaching per ellipsin by ellipsis admittunt admit ablativum an ablative ; ut as, Nobilissimus fidicen a very celebrated lyre player docuit Socratem taught Socrates fidibus the lyre, (i. e. that is ludere fidibus to play on the lyre.)

Quædam etiam verba some verbs also motûs of motion composita compounded cum præpositionibus with the prepositions ad, trans, circum, præter, regunt govern duplicem accusativum a double accusative case, quorum alter one of which refertur is referred ad præpositionem to the preposition ; ut as, Trajecit copias he threw his troops across Iberum the Ebro. Idem he also adigit Afranium jusjurandum compels Afranius to take an oath.

Verba verbs quæ which activâ voce in the active voice regunt govern duplicem accusativum a double accusative case, et and verba verbs vestiendi of clothing, habent have post se after them accusativum an accusative case etiam also in passivâ voce in the passive voice ; ut as, Posceris you are required to sacrifice exta the entrails bovis of a heifer. Belgæ the Belgians transducuntur are led across Rhenum the Rhine. Induiturque and he is clothed aures with the ears aselli of an ass lente gradientis which proceeds slowly.

QUODVIS verbum every verb admittit admits ablativum an ablative case significantem signifying instrumentum the instrument, aut or causam the cause, aut or modum the manner actionis of an action ; ut as, Hi

these certant endeavour defendere to defend themselves jaculis with darts, illi they saxis with stones. Miltiades Miltiades constituit settled res the affairs Chersonesi of the Chersonese summâ æquitate with the greatest equity. Gloriantur they boast suâ victoriâ in their victory. Vivunt they live lacte on milk. Præstitit he excelled omnibus all men lepore in wit. Oportet nos it becomes us dolere to grieve delicto at a fault, gaudere to rejoice correctione at correction. Subvexerat frumentum he had carried corn up flumine Arari the river Saone navibus in ships.

Cum when nomen agentis the name of the agent sequitur follows verbum the verb, ponitur it is put in ablative in the ablative cum præpositione with a preposition ; ut as, Pompeius Pompey victus est was defeated a Cæsare by Cæsar.

Ablativus an ablative pretii of the price plerumque subjicitur is generally put after verbis verbs emendi of buying, vendendi of selling, æstimandi of valuing ; ut as, Victoria the victory stetit Pœnis cost the Carthaginians multo sanguine much blood. Isocrates Isocrates vendidit sold unam orationem one speech triginta talentis for thirty talents.

(a.) Interdum sometimes genitivus a genitive case subjicitur is put after them, voce pretio the word pretio subaudito being understood ; ut as, Nequicquam iis pensi est it is of no consequence to them quid faciant what they do. Judices the judges non flocci faciunt rempublicam do not value the republic a straw.

Tanti for so much, quanti for how much, pluris for more, minoris for less, plurimi for very much, cum paucis similibus with a few similar words sæpe usurpantur are often used post hæc verba after these verbs ; ut as, Eris you will be tanti of so much value aliis to others, quanti as fueris you are tibi to yourself. Alexander Alexander plurimi fecerat Hephæstionem had greatly valued Hephæstion.

Verba *verbs* abundandi *of abounding*, implendi *of filling*, onerandi *of loading*, et *and* his contraria *their contraries*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case*; ut *as*, Antipho, abundas *you abound* amore *with love*. Sylla Sylla explevit *filled* omnes suos *all his army* divitiis *with riches*. Quibus mendaciis *with what lies* homines levissimi *have the vainest men* onerârunt *loaded* te *you*? Queror *I complain* vela *that your sails* carere reditu *have no return*, verba *your words* fide *no honesty*. Egeo pane *I want bread*.

(a.) Sæpe etiam *often also* verba egendi *verbs of wanting* et *and* implendi *of filling* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case*; ut *as*, Implentur *they are filled* veteris Bacchi *with old wine*, pinguisque ferinæ *and fat venison*. Indigent *they want* non tam *not so much* artis *skill* quam *as* laboris *industry*.

Verba *verbs* abstinendi *of abstaining from* atque *and* arcendi *of driving away from* regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative case*; interdum *sometimes* cum præpositione *with a preposition*, quæ quidem *which indeed* semper usurpatur *is always used* ante personam *before a person*; ut *as*, Lucius Brutus *Lucius Brutus* liberavit *delivered* civitatem *the state* dominatu regio *from the dominion of the kings*. Gaudeo *I am glad* te *that you* liberatum *are recovered* a quartanâ *from your ague*. Apud veteres Romanos *among the ancient Romans* nefas habebatur *it was considered impiety* arcere *to repel* quemcunque mortalium *any mortal* tecto *from one's roof*. Tu Jupiter *do you, o Jupiter*, arcebis *repel* hunc *this man* a tuis aris *from your altars*, a tectis urbis *from the houses of the city*.

(a.) Apud poetas *among the poets* (ad usum Græcorum *in imitation of the Greek usage*) verba abstinendi *verbs of abstaining from* aliquando *sometimes* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case*; ut *as*, Abstineto *abstain*, dixit *said she*, irarum *from anger* calidæque rixæ *and hot strife*. Desine desist tandem *at length* mollium querelarum *from effeminate complaints*.

*Fungor to discharge, fruor to enjoy, utor to use, vescor to live upon, dignor to think one's self worthy, muto to change, supersedeo to pass by, junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative case; ut as, Qui he who volet shall desire adipisci to get veram gloriam true glory, fungatur should discharge officiis the duties justitiæ of justice. Hannibal Hannibal cum when posset uti he might have reaped advantagevictoriâ from his victory maluit preferred frui to reap only pleasure. Quid what puer Ascanius is become of the boy Ascanius, superatne does he survive et and vescitur aurâ breathe the air of life? Equidem truly haud dignor me I do not think myself worthy tali honore of such honor. Diruit he pulls down, ædificat he builds, mutat he changes quadrata square things rotundis for round. Supersedendum est we must forbear multitudi-
dine a multitude verborum of words.*

Pascor to feed upon et and nitor to lean upon junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative case, vel either sine præpositione without a preposition, vel or cum præpositione with a preposition; ut as, Pascuntur they feed floribus on flowers et and victu on the food simplicis herbæ of the plain herbs. Livor envy pascitur feeds in vivis on the living. Juvenis the youth qui nititur who leans purâ hastâ on a bright spear. Salus the safety civitatis of the state nitebatur depended in vitâ on the life Pompeii of Pompey.

Ablativus the ablative case dicitur is called absolutus absolute quoties as often as substantivum the substantive construitur is construed in ablativo in the ablative cum participio with a participle, vel or adjectivo an adjective, (interdum sometimes etiam even cum alio substantivo with another substantive,) ut denotet to denote tempus the time vel or modum the manner vel aliam rem comitantem or any other accompanying circumstance; ut as, Archilochus Archilochus floruit flourished Romulo regnante when Romulus was king. Nihil nothing agi potest can be done de hâc re in this matter salvis legibus without violating the laws. Exposito it being shown

quid iniquitas loci posset *what great influence the unfavourable nature of the ground had.* Me duce if *I am the leader* tutus eris *you will be safe.*

Ablativus *an ablative case* partis *of the part* affectæ *affected,* et *and* poëticè *by the poets* accusativus *an accusative,* additur *is added* verbis quibusdam *to some verbs*; ut *as,* Micat *he quivers* auribus *in his ears* et *and* tremit *trembles* artus *as to his limbs.*

Quædam *some of these verbs* usurpantur *are used* (ad usum Græcorum *in imitation of the usage of the Greeks,* sed *but* rarissime *very rarely,*) etiam *also* cum genitivo *with a genitive case*; ut *as,* Facis *you act* absurdè *absurdly* qui *who* angas *tormentest* te *yourself* animi *in mind.*

Exsulo *to be banished* admittit *admits* ablativum *an ablative,* veneo *to be sold* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition,* vapulo *to be beaten* ablativum *an ablative* vel *either* sine præpositione *without a preposition* vel *or* cum præpositione *with a preposition*; ut *as,* Utar *tamen* *but* *I will use* mente *my mind* quæ *which* sola *alone* non exsulat *is not banished* loco *from its place.* Respondit *he answered* se *that* he malle *preferred* spoliari *to be plundered* a cive *by a citizen,* quam venire *to being sold* ab hoste *by an enemy.* Testis *the witness* rogatus est *was asked* an whether vapulasset *he had been beaten* fustibus *with clubs* ab reo *by the prisoner.* Sentiet *he shall feel* se *that* he vapulare *is stricken* sermonibus *by the discourse* omnium *of every one.*

VERBA infinita *verbs of the infinitive mood* adduntur *are put after* quibusdam verbis *some verbs,* et *and* participiis *participles,* et *and* adjectivis *adjectives*; ut *as,* Amor *love* jussit *commanded* me scribere *to write* quæ *what things* puduit *I was ashamed* dicere *to speak.* Jussus *being ordered* confundere *to violate* foedus *the treaty.* Erat *he was* tum *then* dignus *worthy* amari *to be loved.*

Verba *verbs* rogandi *of asking,* hortandi *of exhorting,* imperandi *of commanding,* et *and* contraria *the contrary,* raro *seldom* (nisi *except* apud poetas *in the poets*) habent

have infinitivum an infinitive post se after them, plerumque vero but usually conjunctionem a conjunction cum subjunctivo with the subjunctive mood. Oro et hortor te illud this I beg and exhort you, ut sis to be diligentissimus most diligent in munere tuo in your office. Moneo I warn obtestorque and entreat you, ne hos negligas not to neglect these people qui who propinqui tibi sunt genere are near to you in family. Themistocles Themistocles persuasit populo persuaded the people ut classis that a fleet ædificaretur should be built.

(a.) Ex his vero but of these verbs jubeo to command et and veto to forbid etiam in pedestri sermone even in prose sæpius junguntur are oftenest joined infinitivo to an infinitive ; ut as, Hannibal Hannibal jussit ordered Tarentinos the Tarentines convocari to be summoned sine armis without arms.

Conjunctio a conjunction cum subjunctivo with a subjunctive mood semper sequitur always follows verba efficiendi verbs of causing ; ut as, Tu do you facito ut sciam take care that I know quicquid indagâris whatever you find out de republicâ about the republic.

Conjunctio a conjunction cum with subjunctivo a subjunctive plerumque sequitur usually follows verba accidendi verbs of happening et and similia the like ; ut as, Persæpe evenit it often happens ut that utilitas expediency certet is at variance cum honestate with honesty. Quoniam since satisfeci I have satisfied amicis my friends, reliquum est it remains ut egomet mihi consulam for me to take care of myself.

(a.) Sed but infinitivus an infinitive sæpe sequitur often follows contingit ; ut as, Non contingit it does not happen cuivis homini to every man adire Corinthum to go to Corinth.

Verba verbs permittendi of permitting, optandi of wishing, cogendi of compelling, admittunt admit vel either infinitivum an infinitive, vel or ut, cum subjunctivo with a subjunctive ; ut as, Phaethon Phaethon optavit wished ut tolleretur to be taken up in currum into the chariot

patris of his father. Natura nature non patitur does not permit ut augeamus us to increase nostras opes our riches spoliis by the spoils aliorum of others. Permittes you will permit ipsis numinibus the Gods themselves expendere to consider quid what conveniat is good for nobis us.

Oportet it behoves et and necesse est it is necessary habent post se have after them interdum sometimes infinitivum an infinitive mood, sæpius more frequently subjunctivum a subjunctive ; ut as, Oportet valeat possessor the owner should be in good health. Tanquam as if non solum oporteret it were not only right sed etiam but even necesse esset necessary ita fieri that it should be done so. Necesse est it is inevitable corpus mortale that a mortal body intereat should perish.

Post verba orandi after verbs of entreating, imperandi of commanding, vel or volendi of wishing, ut sæpe omititur ut is often omitted, verbum tamen nevertheless the verb ponitur is put in subjunctivo in the subjunctive mood ; ut as, Rogo atque oro te I beg and entreat you pro amore nostro by my regard for you colligas te to recollect yourself virumque præbeas and show yourself a man. Postero die the next day rex the king edixit ordered omnes all the men coirent to assemble armati armed. Vellem I wish Diî immortales the immortal Gods fecissent had granted ut ageremus gratias that we should be returning thanks Ser. Sulpicio to Servius Sulpicius vivo while alive. Malo I had rather sapiens hostis that a wise enemy metuat te should fear you quam than stulti cives foolish citizens laudent praise you.

Sic so post after cave beware ne sæpe omititur ne is often omitted ; ut as, Cave existimes do not believe me that I abjecisse curam have abandoned all regard rei-publicæ for the republic.

Verba infinita verbs of the infinitive mood interdum sometimes ponuntur are put sola alone per ellipsin by the figure ellipsis ; ut as, Hinc upon this spargere in vulgum [he began] to scatter abroad voces ambiguas

doubtful sayings, et and conscius knowing himself guilty quærere to seek arma means to destroy me. (Incipiebat he began, subauditur hic is here understood.)

GERUNDIA in *di gerunds in di* habent *have eandem constructionem the same construction cum with genitivis genitive cases, et and pendent depend à substantivis on substantives, vel or ab adjectivis on adjectives, nunquam never a verbis from verbs ; ut as, Innatus amor a natural desire habendi of getting honey urget excites Cecropias apes the Attic bees. Æneas, celsâ in puppi in his tall ship jam certus already determined eundi to go.*

Gerundia in do gerunds in do habent *have eandem constructionem the same construction cum with dativis datives et and ablativis ablatives ; ut as, Illud that commune est is common ediscendo to learning scribendoque and writing. Vitium the disease alitur is nourished vivitque and lives tegendo by being concealed.*

Præpositio the preposition sine without nunquam usurpatur is never used cum gerundiis in do with gerunds in do.

Gerundia in dum gerunds in dum habent *have eandem constructionem the same construction cum accusativis with accusatives, sed but semper exigunt always require præpositionem a preposition præcedentem preceding them ; ut as, Locus a place amplissimus very honourable ad agendum to plead in. Mores puerorum the characters of boys detegunt se simplicius discover themselves with more plainness inter ludendum in playing.*

Si if verbum the verb regit governs accusativum an accusative, gerundivum the gerundive sæpius usurpatur is oftener used quam than gerundium the gerund ; ut as, Timotheus Timotheus peritus fuit was skilful civitatis regendæ in governing a state. Duci to be persuaded præmio by a bribe ad accusandos homines to accuse men, est is proximum next akin latrocinio to robbery.

(a.) Utor to use, fruor to enjoy, fungor to discharge, notior to gain, usurpantur are used eodem modo in the

same manner ; ut as, Olim formerly bene morati men of good character videntur appear reges constituti to have been appointed kings causâ for the sake fruendæ justitiæ of enjoying justice. Tradiderat ei he had given him omnia bona all his property utenda to be made use of.

Gerundivum the gerundive in nominativo in the nominative case (et and in accusativo in the accusative, cum when verbum a verb infinitivi modi of the infinitive mood adjungitur is added vel or subauditur understood) indicat indicates necessitatem necessity vel or officium propriety vel or possibilitatem possibility ; ut as, Orandum est one must pray ut sit mens sana to have a sound mind in corpore sano in a sound body. Diligentia industry est is præcipue especially colenda to be cultivated nobis by us, et and semper adhibenda always to be employed. Putabat he thought eos them observandos to be attended to et colendos and respected a se by him.

SUPINUM in um the supine in um habet has activam significationem an active signification, et and sequitur follows verbum a verb significans signifying motum motion ad locum to a place ; ut as, Veniunt they come spectatum to see, veniunt they come ut that ipsæ they themselves spectentur may be seen.

Supinum in u the supine in u habet has passivam significationem a passive signification, et and sequitur follows adjectiva adjectives ; ut as, Quod that which est is foedum foul factu to be done, idem the same est is et also turpe shameful dictu to be spoken.

VERBA verbs quæ which non habent have not nominativum a nominative case, neque inflectuntur and are not declined ultra beyond tertiam personam singularem the third person singular et and infinitivum the infinitive, dicuntur are called impersonalia verbs impersonal ; ut as, Hinc on one side tonat it thunders, hinc on the other æther the sky abruptitur is rent asunder missis ignibus by lightnings darted down.

Hæc impersonalia *these impersonals*, interest it concerns, et *and* refert it concerns, junguntur *are joined* quibuslibet genitivis *to any genitive cases*, et *and* hos ablativos *to these ablative cases*, meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ; ut *as*, Interest it concerns magistratûs the magistrate tueri *to defend* bonos the good. Tuâ refert it concerns you nôsse *to know* teipsum yourself.

Et also hi genitivi *these genitive cases* adduntur *are added*, tanti so much, quanti how much, magni much, parvi little, pluris more, minoris less, et *and* similia *similar words*; ut *as*, Tanti refert of such concern it is agere *to do* honesta honest things.

Verba impersonalia *impersonal verbs* regunt *govern* casus *cases* pro sensu *according to their meaning*, more aliorum verborum *like other verbs*; ut *as*, Minime decet it does not at all become oratorem an orator irasci *to be angry*. Licuit Themistocli it was in the power of Themistocles esse *to be* otioso indolent.

Præpositio *ad the preposition* ad propriè additur *is peculiarly added* his verbis *to these verbs*, attinet it belongs, pertinet it pertains, spectat it concerns; ut *as*, Vis would you have me me dicere *to speak* quod what attinet belongs ad te *to you*?

Decet it becomes, attinet, et *and* spectat it concerns, quamvis *although* dicuntur they are called impersonalia *impersonals* sæpe often habent have nominativum a *nominative case*, et *and* sæpe inveniuntur *are often found* in tertiâ personâ plurali *in the third person plural*; ut *as*, Candida pax fair peace decet becomes homines men, trux ira savage passion feras wild beasts. Quæ things which nihil attinent *are nothing to the purpose*. Ea these things non spectant *have no reference* ad religionem *to religion*.

Accusativus *an accusative case* personæ of the person, cum genitivo *with a genitive* rei of the thing, subjicitur *is put after* his impersonalibus *these verbs impersonal*, pœnitet it repents, tædet it wearies, miseret it pities, pudet it shames, piget it grieves; ut *as*, Malo me pœniteat I had rather repent fortunæ of my fortune quam than

pudeat *be ashamed* victoriæ *of my victory*. Non solum me piget *I am not only sorry* stultitiæ meæ *for my folly*, sed etiam *but even* pudet *I am ashamed of it*. Miseret nos *we pity* eorum *them*. Si *if* non pertæsum fuisset *I were not weary* thalami *thalami* tædæque *tædæque of the marriage bed and the marriage torch*.

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* res *the thing* exprimitur *is expressed* vel *either* verbo infinitivi modi *by a verb in the infinitive mood*, vel *or* conjunctione *with the conjunction* quodd *because* et verbo *and a verb*; ut *as*, Non me pudet *I am not ashamed* fateri *to confess* nescire *that I am ignorant* quod nesciam *of what I am ignorant*. Pœnitet me *I repent* quod te offendi *of having offended you*.

Pleraque passiva verba *most passive verbs* verti possunt *can be turned* in impersonalia *into impersonals* in tertiâ personâ singulari *in the third person singular*, et *and* admittunt *admit* post se *after them* dativum *a dative* agentis *of the agent*, vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition* (qui vero *which however* sæpius subauditur *is usually understood*;) eum vero casum *but that case* objecti *of the object* quem *which* verbum activum *the active verb* regit *governs*; ut *as*, Quo ruitis *whither are you rushing*, generosa domus *o noble family?* male creditur *it is folly to trust* hosti *an enemy*. Migratur *one migrates* morte *through death* in alium quendam locum *to some other place* ex his locis *from this place*.

QUÆ nouns which significant *signify* partem temporis *a part of time* ponuntur *are put* in ablativo *in the ablative case*; ut *as*, Nemo mortalium *no mortal man* sapit *is wise* omnibus horis *at all hours*.

Quæ nouns which significant *signify* durationem *the duration* temporis *of time*, ponuntur *are put* in accusativo *in the accusative case*; ut *as*, Hic *here* jam *from this time* regnabitur *kings shall reign* ter centum totos annos *full three hundred years*.

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* cum *when* *ætas* *hominis* *the age of a man* significatur *is signified*, genitivus *the genitive* usurpatur *is used*; ut *as*, Hamilcar *Hamilcar* duxit *took with him* in Hispaniam *into Spain* filium *his son* Hannibalem *Hannibal* annorum novem *a boy of nine years old*.

(b.) Interdum *sometimes*, sed *but* perraro *very seldom*, duratio temporis *duration of time* significatur *is signified* per ablativum *by the ablative*; ut *as*, Panætius *Panætius* vixit *lived* triginta annis *thirty years* posteaquam *after* ediderat *he had published* libros *his books* de officiis *about duties*.

SPATIUM *the space* loci *of a place* ponitur *is put* in accusativo *in the accusative case*, cum *when* motus *motion* to a place significatur *is signified*; in ablativo *in the ablative*, cum *when* statio *rest* in a place; ut *as*, Jam *now* processeram *I had advanced* mille passus *a mile*. Con-sedit *he encamped* millibus passuum sex *six miles* a Cæsaris castris *from Cæsar's camp*.

(a.) Interdum vero *but sometimes* accusativus *the accusative* usurpatur *is used* etiam *even* cum *when* statio *rest* significatur *is signified*; ut *as*, Locat castra *he pitches his camp* mille fere et quingentos passus *about a mile and a half* ab urbe *from the city*. Dicimus etiam *we say also*, Abest *he is distant* bidui *two days journey*: ubi *where* itinere, vel *or* iter, intelligitur *is understood*.

OMNE verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* genitivum *a genitive case* nominis *of the name* oppidi *of a city or town* in quo *in which* actio *fit* any thing *is done*; modò *so that* sit *it be* primæ *of the first* vel *or* secundæ *declensionis* *the second declension*, et *and* singularis numeri *of the singular number*; ut *as*, Quid faciam *what shall I do* Romæ *at Rome*?

Hi genitivi *these genitive cases*, domi *at home*, humi *upon the ground*, militiæ *in war*, belli *in war*, sequuntur *follow* formam *the construction* nominum propriorum *of*

proper names ; ut as, Præterea besides augeant rempublicam let them strengthen the republic quibuscunque rebus in whatever matters poterunt they can vel either belli in war vel or domi at home. Bos the ox procumbit lies dead humi on the ground. Fuimus we were semper always unà together militiæ in war et and domi at home.

Verùm but si if nomen the name oppidi of a city or town fuerit shall be pluralis numeri of the plural number, aut or tertiæ declinationis of the third declension, ponitur it is put in ablativo in the ablative case ; ut as, Colchus a Colchian, an or Assyrius an Assyrian ; nutritus brought up Thebis at Thebes, an or Argis at Argos. Ventosus being inconstant, Romæ at Rome amo I love Tibur Tibur ; Tibure at Tibur Romam I love Rome.

Nomen the name oppidi of a town vel or insulæ of an island additur is put after verbis verbs significantibus signifying motum motion ad locum to a place in accusativo in the accusative case sine præpositione without a preposition ; ut as, Atque and aliquis some one inquit will say, jam nunc now then eat let him go doctas Athenas to the learned Athens.

Domus a house et and rus the country sequuntur follow hanc constructionem this construction ; ut as, Capellæ ye she-goats, saturæ being full, ite domum go home, Hesperus the evening venit approaches, ite be gone. Ego I rus ibo will go into the country.

Nomen the name oppidi of a town vel or insulæ of an island additur is put after verbis verbs significantibus signifying motum motion à loco from a place in ablativo in the ablative case sine præpositione without a preposition ; ut as, Nisi profectus esses if you had not gone Româ from Rome antè before, relinques you would leave eam it nunc now.

(a.) Perraro very seldom post verba motûs after verbs of motion præpositiones prepositions inveniuntur are found ante nomina before the names urbium of cities ; ut as, Adolescentulus while a youth miles profectus sum I went

as a soldier ad Capuam to Capua. Segesta Segesta condita est *was built* ab Æneâ by Æneas fugiente *when flying* a Trojâ from Troy.

(b.) Interdum etiam *sometimes even* regionum nomina *the names of countries* ponuntur *are put* post verba motûs *after verbs of motion* in accusativo *in the accusative* vel or ablativo *in the ablative* pro sensu *according to the sense* sine præpositione *without a preposition*; ut *as*, Germanicus Germanicus proficiscitur *sets out* Ægyptum *for Egypt*. Dein then Piso Piso statuit *determined* abire *to depart* Syriâ *from Syria*.

(c.) Apud poetas *in the poets* quodvis substantivum *any substantive* quod *which* sequitur *follows* verbum motûs *a verb of motion* ad locum *to a place*, interdum ponitur *is sometimes put* in accusativo *in the accusative case*. ut *as*, Dido Dido et and dux Trojanus *the Trojan leader* deveniunt *come* to eandem speluncam *the same cave*. Refers you utter verba *words* non pervenientia *which do not reach* nostras aures *my ears*.

Adverbia *adverbs* loci *of place*, ubi *where*, ubique *everywhere*, ubicunque *everywhere*, usquam *any where*, nusquam *nowhere*, huc *hither*, eo *thither*, quo *whither* et cætera *and the rest*, interdum *sometimes* habent post se *have after them* genitivos *the genitive cases* terrarum, gentium, loci, locorum, et *and cum when* significant *they signify* gradum *degree*, alios genitivos *other genitives*; ut *as*, Ubicunque terrarum et gentium *in whatever country and nation* jus civium Romanorum *the rights of Roman citizens* violatum est *have been violated*, pertinet ad it *concerns* communem causam *the common cause* libertatis *of liberty*. Videmini *you seem* nescire *to be ignorant* quo amentia *to what a pitch of folly* progressi sitis *you have gone*. Venturus eram *I was about to come* eo miseriæ *to that degree of misery*.

(a.) Sic *so* post *after* tum, tunc, *then* genitivus temporis *the genitive temporis* aliquando occurrit *sometimes occurs*, sed *but* non *not* apud optimos auctores *among the best authors*; ut *as*, Poteram *I could* do nihil *nothing*

ampliùs more tunc temporis at that time quàm than flere weep.

Pridie the day before et and postridie the day after admittunt admit genitivum diei the genitive diei post se after them, et and accusativum an accusative partium of the parts mensis of a month, vel or nominum of the names festorum of festivals ; ut as, Pridie ejus diei the day before that day venit he came in Senatum into the Senate. Pridie calendas the day before the calends abiit he departed.

Adverbia quantitatis adverbs of quantity admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case ; ut as, Satis eloquentiæ eloquence enough, sapientiæ parùm little wisdom.

Quædam adverbia some adverbs admittunt admit eosdem casus the same cases qui which exiguntur are required a vocibus by the words a quibus from which derivantur they are derived ; ut as, Sulpicius Gallus studuit Græcis literis studied Greek literature maxime most omnium nobilium of all the nobles. Exercitum habuit he kept his army quam proxime as near as possible hostem to the enemy.

Ergo for the sake of habet has genitivum a genitive case post se after it ; ut as, Donari to be rewarded ergo for the sake of virtutis virtue.

Procul far from interdum sometimes jungitur is joined ablativo to an ablative case ; ut as, Multi many men gessere have managed suam rem their own affairs et publicam and those of the state bene well procul far patriâ from their country.

Apud poetas in the poets et and scriptores prose writers serioris ævi of a later age clam without the knowledge of, palam in the presence of, et and simul together with, junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative case ; et and aliquando sometimes usque all the way to or from cum accusativo with an accusative vel or ablativo an ablative ; ut as, Clam without the

knowledge of uxore meâ my wife et and filio my son. Simul his together with these dicere possum I may mention te you, candide Furni o excellent Furnius. Velabant they covered corpora their bodies usque pedes as far as their feet carbaso with linen.

CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ *conjunctions copulative et and* disjunctivæ *disjunctive* conjungunt *couple* similes casus *the like cases*, modos *moods*, et *and* tempora *tenses*; ut *as*, Socrates, docuit *taught* Xenophontem *Xenophon* et *and* Platonem *Plato*. Nec scribit *he neither writes* nec legit *nor reads*. Occidit *he has died* flebilior *more to be wept* nulli *by no one* quam *than* tibi *by you*, Virgilî *o Virgil*.

Nisi *unless* ratio *the reason* variæ constructionis *of a different construction* poscat *requires it should be* aliud *otherwise*; ut *as*, Emi *I bought* librum *a book* centussi *for a hundred pence* et *and* pluris *more*. Vixi *I lived* Romæ *at Rome* et *and* Venetiis *at Venice*.

Poetæ *the poets* interdum *sometimes* usurpant *use* atque, *pro for* quam *than* post *comparativum* after *a comparative*; ut *as*, Arctius *atque* closer *than* procera *illex the lofty illex* astringitur *is bound* hederæ *to the ivy*.

Cum *when* comparatio *comparison* significatur *is signified*; tam *so, or* as, sæpe *often* usurpatur *is used*, quam *as* respondente *answering to it*; ut *as*, Vellem *I wish* tam possem *I were* as well able *ferre to bear* domestica *my domestic* griefs *quam* as *contemnere to despise* ista *those*.

Cum *when* significatur *it is signified* aliquid *that any* thing maximum *esse is the greatest* quod fieri potest *which can be*, sæpe *often* superlativum *the superlative* usurpatur *is used*, quam præcedente *preceded by* quam, *interdum sometimes* by quam possum; ut *as*, Nihil fuit *nothing was* optabilius *more desirable* mihi *to me* quam *ut cognosceret than to be known* esse *to be* quam gratis-simus *as grateful as possible* erga *te towards* you. Cæsar

Cæsar contendit ad hostem *proceeded towards the enemy* quam maximis potuit itineribus *by as rapid marches as possible*.

Pro quam *for* quam ante superlativum maximus *before the superlative maximus*, quantus *as great as* aliquando usurpatur *is sometimes used*; ut *as*, Hannibal *Hannibal* efficit causas quantam maximam vastitatem potest *as great devastation as he can* cædibus *by slaughter* incendiisque *and fires*.

Donec, quoad, until, *as long as*, et *and* dum *while*, *as long as*, until, cum *when* refertur ad tempus *it has reference to time* plerumque usually exigunt *require* indicativum modum *an indicative mood*, rarius more seldom subjunctivum *a subjunctive*; ut *as*, Dum *while* regna the kingdom Priami of Priam manebant *lasted*. Milo *Milo* fuit in Senatu *was in the Senate* eo die *on that day* quoad until Senatus the Senate dimissus est *was adjourned*. Donec until Marcellus *Marcellus* rediit *returned* silentium fuit *there was silence*. Haud desinam *I will not cease* donec until perfecero *I have finished*. Dum until tertia ætas the third age viderit *shall have seen him* regnantem *reigning*. Fortasse perhaps expectas *you are waiting* dum until hæc dicat *he says this*.

Dummodo *as long as (not of time)* et *and* dum, vel or modo, usurpata *when used* pro *for* dummodo, jungitur *are joined* subjunctivo soli *to a subjunctive mood only*; ut *as*, Omnia postposui *I thought everything of little consequence* dummodo *as long as* parerem *I could obey* præceptis the precepts patris of my father. Oderint *let them hate me* dum provided that metuant *they fear me*. Manent ingenia *their faculties remain* senibus *to old men* modo provided studium *study* et industria *and industry* permaneat *remain*.

Quum *since, as*, significans *signifying* causam the cause vel or denotans *denoting* connectionem aliquam *any connection* duarum sententiarum *between two sentences* jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive*

mood, si if usurpatur it be used pro for quod because, indicativo to an indicative ; ut as, Druentia the Durance, quum although vebat it comes down vim aquæ ingentem a great body of water, non tamen patiens est will not however bear navium vessels. Quum since vita life sine amicis without friends plena sit is full insidiarum of treachery et metûs and fear, ratio ipsa reason itself monet warns us comparare to form amicitias friendships. Præclare facis you do well quum tenes in preserving memoriam the recollection Luculli of Lucullus.

Quum as, sequente tum when followed by tum so, jungitur is joined interdum sometimes subjunctivo to a subjunctive mood, sæpius more frequently indicativo to an indicative ; ut as, Quum multæ res as many things in philosophiâ in philosophy nequicquam satis explicatæ sint have been by no means sufficiently explained, tum so also quæstio the question de naturâ Deorum about the nature of the Gods perdifficilis est is very difficult.— Quum cupio I both desire consequi to acquire ipsam cognitionem the knowledge juris augurii of the laws of soothsaying, tum mehercule and in truth incredibiliter delector I am incredibly delighted tuis studiis with your studies.

Quum when, tempus significans meaning time, jungitur is joined interdum sometimes indicativo to the indicative, interdum sometimes subjunctivo to the subjunctive ; ut as, Qui he who non propulsat does not repel injuriam injury a suis from his friends quum potest when he can injuste facit acts unjustly. Quinque nobiles juvenes five noble youths venerunt came ad Hannibalem to Hannibal quum esset when he was ad lacum Averni at lake Avernus. Erit illud profecto tempus the time indeed will come quum when desideras you will regret fidem the attachment gravissimi hominis of a most worthy man.

Antequam et and priusquam before that junguntur are joined subjunctivo to a subjunctive mood si if res

the matter est is in dubio in doubt, vel or si if duæ res the two matters de quibus agitur which are spoken of connectuntur are connected; aliter otherwise admittunt they admit indicativum an indicative; ut as, Tempestas a tempest minatur threatens antequam surgat before it rises. Omnia all things veneunt are sold antequam before una gleba one clod of earth ematur is bought. Quam bene how happily vivebant men lived Saturno rege when Saturn was king, priusquam before tellus the earth patefacta est was levelled in longas vias into long roads.

Quin et and quominus but that sequentia following negationem a negation vel or dubitationem a doubt, vel simile aliquod or any similar expression, exigunt require subjunctivum a subjunctive mood; ut as, Non dubitat he does not doubt quin but that Troja Troy peritura sit will perish brevi in a short time. Parmenio Parmenio voluit wished detertere to deter Philippum Philip quominus biberet from drinking medicamentum the medicine. Solitudines solitude non protegebant did not protect Tiberium Tiberius quin fateretur from confessing tormenta the torments pectoris of his breast.

Conjunctiones finales the final conjunctions ut that, quo so that, ne that not, et and aliæ others derivatæ derived ab his from them, exigunt require subjunctivum a subjunctive mood; ut as, Pylades Pylades dixit said se that he Oresten esse was Orestes ut necaretur that he might be put to death pro illo for him. Oportet it is desirable legem that a law brevem esse should be short quo in order that facilius teneatur it may be more easily comprehended ab imperitis by the ignorant. Vereor I fear ne augeam lest I may be increasing tuum laborem your trouble.

Ut, cum when significat it signifies time vel or comparisonem a comparison, habet has indicativum an indicative mood post se after it; ut as, Ut since sumus we have been in Ponto in Pontus Ister the Danube ter constitit has thrice been stopped frigore by cold. Ut as

columbæ doves timidissima a most timid bird fugiant fly from aquilam an eagle.

Ut, pro *for* ubi *where*, (*rarus est usus it is a rare usage*) jungitur *is joined* indicativo *to an indicative*; ut *as*, Ut *where* littus *the shore* tunditur *is beaten* longe resonante Eoâ undâ *by the far-sounding Eastern wave.*

Ut, pro *for* quamvis *although*, jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*; ut *as*, Ut *although* fueris *you were* dignior *the more worthy*, competitor *your competitor* non est in culpâ *is not in fault.*

Utinam *I wish that* exigit *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*; ut *as*, Utinam *I wish that* tu quoque *you also* mutabilis *esses were changeable* cum ventis *as well as the winds.* Utinam *I wish* ne vere scriberem illud *I did not write that with truth.*

Licet *although* jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*; quamvis *although* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive* sæpius *oftener* quam *than* indicativo *to an indicative*, nisi *except* apud poetas *among the poets*; quanquam *although* indicativo *to an indicative* sæpius *oftener* quam *than* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive*; etsi *although* vel *either* indicativo *to an indicative* vel *or* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive*; ut *as*, Improbitas *dishonesty* licet *although* molesta sit *it be troublesome* adversario *to one's adversary* invisa est *is hateful* judici *to the judge.* Quod turpe est *what is base*, id *that*, quamvis *although* occultetur *it may be concealed*, tamen nullo modo potest fieri *can by no means be rendered* honestum *honourable.* Romani *the Romans*, quanquam *although* fessi erant *they were weary* prælio *of fighting*, tamen *yet* procedunt *advance.* Viri boni *good men* faciunt *do* multa *many things* ob eam causam *because it is right*, etsi *although* vident *they see* nullum emolumentum *no advantage* consecuturum *likely to ensue.*

Si *if* et *and* nisi *unless*, cum *when* indicatur *it is indicated* rem *that the thing* de quâ agitur *of which one is speaking* velexistere *either exists* vel posse existere *or may*

exist junguntur *are joined* indicativo modo *to the indicative mood*, vel or præsenti *to the present* vel perfectó or perfect tense subjunctivi *of the subjunctive*; cum *when* indicatur *it is indicated* rem *that the thing* non existere *does not exist*, exigunt *they require* imperfectum *the imperfect* vel or plusquam perfectum *the plusquam perfect* subjunctivi *of the subjunctive*; ut *as*, Debebas colere *you ought to respect* hunc *this man* patris loco *as you would your father*, si *if* esset *there were* ulla pietas *any piety* in te *in you*. Si *if* unquam *ever* visus sum *I have appeared* tibi *to you* fortis *brave*, certe *certainly* me admiratus esses *you would have admired me* in illâ causâ *in that cause*. Tu cave *do you beware* nisi *unless* debes ludibrium *you are bent on becoming the sport* ventis *of the winds*. Multa *many things* dehortantur *me tend to divert me* a vobis *from you*, nî *unless* studium *my affection* reipublicæ *for the republic* superet *overpowered them*.

Quasi, tanquam, *as if*, et similia *and similar words*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*; ut *as*, Quid *why* ego utor *do I use* his testibus *these witnesses* quasi *as if* res *the matter* incerta *esset were uncertain* ac *and* dubia *doubtful*. Cogitandum *est we ought to regulate our thoughts* sic *so* tanquam *as if* aliquis *any one* possit inspicere *were able to look* in intimum pectus *into our inmost heart*.

Quod, quia, *because*, quoniam *since*, junguntur *are joined* indicativo *to an indicative mood* cum *when* indicant *they indicate* opinionem *the opinion* loquentis *of the speaker*; cum *when* aliorum *that of others*, subjunctivo *to a subjunctive*; ut *as*, Refugit te *he flies from you* quia *because* rugæ *wrinkles* et *and* capitis nives *snowy hair* turpant *disfigure you*. Panætius *Panætius* laudat *praises* Africanum *Africanus* quod *because* abstinens *fuerit he was temperate*.

Utrum, ne, an, num, cum *when* significant *they signify* dubitationem *a doubt* vel or obliquam interrogationem *an indirect question*, postulant *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*, etiamsi *even if* conjunctio ipsa *the*

conjunction itself subaudiatur be understood; ut as, Difficile dictu est it is difficult to say utrum whether hostes the enemy pugnantes while fighting timuerint feared virtutem the valour Pompeii of Pompey magis more, an or victi when conquered dilexerint loved mansuetudinem his clemency. Legati the ambassadors jussi sunt were ordered speculari to see num whether animi the dispositions sociorum of the allies sollicitati, essent had been tampered with a rege Perseo by king Perseus. Nihil interest it does not signify doleam whether I grieve necne doleam or do not grieve.

Ne, cum when prohibet it forbids, jungitur is joined imperativo to an imperative vel or subjunctivo to a subjunctive mood; ut as, Ne temne do not despise us quod because ultro of our own accord præferimus we bring vittas fillets manibus in our hands. Tu ne quæsieris do not you enquire quem finem what end Dî the Gods dederint have assigned mihi to me, quem tibi or to you.

Omnes voces all words quæ which exprimunt express meram interrogationem a mere question junguntur are joined indicativo to an indicative mood; ut as, Tu ne did you veritus es fear id that? Num piget eum is he sorry facti for his deed? Quis fuit who was he qui primus who first protulit produced horrendos enses horrible swords?

Qui who significans signifying causam the cause exigit requires subjunctivum a subjunctive mood; ut as, Clusini the Clusians misere sent legatos ambassadors Romam to Rome qui peterent to beg for auxilium aid a Senatu from the Senate. Voluptas pleasure non est digna is not worthy ad quam sapiens respiciat that a wise man should regard it.

Cum vero but when relativa propositio a relative proposition supplet locum supplies the place substantivi of a substantive, verbum the verb ponitur is put in indicativo in the indicative; ut as, Num alii oratores is one class of orators probantur approved of a multitudine by the multitude, alii another ab iis qui intelligunt (i.e. a

sapientibus) *by intelligent people?* Placavi *I appeased* quoscumque audiavi *all whom I heard* querentes *complaining de te of you.*

Omnes voces *all words* positæ *placed* indefinite indefinitely, vel or in obliquâ oratione *in an indirect sentence,* vel or sententiâ *in a sentence* pendente ab aliâ *depending on another,* postulant require subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood;* ut as, Innocentia *innocence* est is talis affectio *such a disposition* animi *of mind* quæ as noceat *hurts* nemini *no one.* Video *I see* cui scribam *to whom I am writing.* Credite *believe* experto *one who has tried* quantus *how,* with what might, assurgat *he rises* in clypeum *against the shield,* quo turbine *with what force* torqueat *he hurls* hastam *the spear.*

Præpositiones *the prepositions* adversum *adversus* against, cis *citra* on this side, apud *near,* ante *before,* penesque *and in the power of,* intra *within,* infra *below,* contra *against,* supra *above,* post *after,* circiter *about (of time,)* inter *between or among,* ad *to,* circa *circum* around, juxta *near,* ergo *towards,* præter *besides or except,* et *and* extra *without,* ob *on account of,* prope *near,* per *through,* propter *on account of, and near,* versus *towards,* trans *across,* pone *behind,* secundum *according to,* ultra *beyond,* regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative;* ut as, Quem penes *in whose power* arbitrium *the decision is.* Ter *thrice* raptaverat *he had hurried* Hectora *Hector* circum *around* Iliacos muros *the Trojan walls.* Propter *near* aquas *the waters.* Amicitia *friendship* expetenda est *is to be sought* propter se *for its own sake.* Fugiens *flying from* pauperiem *poverty* per mare *over the sea.* Ludi *games* facti sunt *were celebrated* per decem dies *for ten days.* Per me unum *by my means alone* effectum est *has it been caused* ut *that* libertas *liberty* maneret *remains* in civitate *in the city.* Sophocles *Sophocles* fecit tragœdias *composed tragedies* ad summam senectutem *till extreme old age.* Locavi castra *I pitched my camp* ad Cybistra *at Cybistra.* Aliquot post menses *after some months* venit *he came* ad Cæsarem *to*

Cæsar. *Atra cura ill-omened care sedet sits post equitem behind the horseman. Cæsar Cæsar transduxit led copias suas his forces præter castra by the camp. Condemnatus est he was condemned omnibus sententiis by all the votes præter unam but one.*

A (ante vocalem before a vowel *ab*) *from, absque, sine without, coram in the presence of, cum with, de concerning, or from, e* (ante vocalem before a vowel *ex*) *out of, præ before, for, pro for, in front of, regunt govern ablativum an ablative; ut as, A te from you is principium the beginning, desinet it shall end tibi with you. Discordia est mihi I have a quarrel tecum with you. Infans an infant animosus spirited non sine Dīs not without the favour of the Gods. Non potuit loqui he could not speak præ mœrore for fear. Stabat he was standing pro templo in front of the temple et and tenebat was occupying Capitolia celsa the lofty Capitol. Cuncta everything erant was pro hostibus in favour of the enemy. E consulatu from his consulship profectus est he went in Galliam into Gaul. Gessimus we have administered rempublicam the republic feliciter successfully, et and ex meâ sententiâ according to my wish.*

In, super, sub, et and subter (quod tamen *which however raro invenitur is seldom found*) *regunt govern accusativum an accusative vel or ablativum an ablative pro sensu according to the sense in which they are used; ut as, Imperium the empire Jovis of Jupiter est is in reges ipsos over kings themselves. Venit he came in Senatum into the Senate. Lucus fuit there was a grove in arce summâ in the highest part of the citudel. Proferet he shall extend imperium his dominion super beyond et both Garamantas the Garamantes et and Indos the Indians. Rogitans asking multa many things super Priamo about Priam, multa many super Hectore about Hector. Venator the huntsman manet remains sub Jove frigidus under the cold sky. Sub eas literas after those letters tuæ yours statim sunt recitatæ were immediately read. Multaque and many things me fugiunt are forgotten by*

the spectata which were
earliest years. Examen
was sent sub jugum
Aeneas Eneides
tecti of a small
testudine a thing

Tenus as for
an ablative sinon
an ablative or
quitar follows case
be plunged into
to the hit.
down a mento
legs. Altera
per jugulum
feathers.

Præpositio
nominumque
same case
positionem
thrust off
tereunt con
Verba
ad con
tions, sec
the same
a vino

INTER
are often
homon
the flac
stones.
A. Th
vocative
vocative
on an.
homon

happiness. O formose puer O beautiful boy, ne crede trust not nimium too much colori to your beauty.

Heu, et and proh alas! junguntur are joined accusativo to an accusative, vel or vocativo to a vocative; ut as, Heu pietas alas his piety! Heu prisca fides alas the ancient integrity! Heu stirpem invisam alas the odious stock! Proh fidem alas the help deûm of gods atque and hominum of men! Proh sancte Jupiter O sacred Jupiter!

Hei, et and vae alas, junguntur are joined dativo to a dative case; ut as, Hei mihi woe is me, quod that amor love est is medicabilis curable nullis herbis by no herbs! Vae misero mihi wretched man that I am, quantâ de spe from how great hope decidi am I fallen!

En et and ecce behold junguntur are joined nominativo to a nominative vel or accusativo to an accusative case; ut as, Ecce tibi behold Italiæ tellus the land of Italy. En behold quatuor aras four altars; Ecce behold duas two tibi for you Daphni Daphnis, duoque altaria and two altars Phœbo for Apollo.

PROSODIA CONSTRUED.

PROSODIA *prosody* est is pars that part Grammaticæ of Grammar, quæ which docet teaches quantitatem the quantity (or, due sound) syllabarum of syllables.

Prosodia *prosody* dividitur is divided in tres partes into three parts; tonum the tone, spiritum the breathing, et and tempus the time.

Hoc loco in this place visum est nobis it is thought most proper tractare to treat tantum only de tempore of time.

TEMPUS *time* est is mensura the measure syllabæ proferendæ of a syllable to be uttered (or, of the pronouncing a syllable.)

Tempus breve a short time notatur is distinguished sic thus (˘); ut as for example, Dōmīnūs the Lord; autem but longum a long time sic in this manner (—); ut as, cōtrā against.

Pes a foot est is constitutio the placing together duarum syllabarum of two syllables pluriumve or more ex certâ observatione according to the certain observation temporum of the times (or, measures of the syllables.)

Pes a foot duarum longarum syllabarum of two long syllables est is spondæus a spondee, ut as virtus virtue.

Longa syllaba a long syllable duabus brevibus syllabis sequentibus with two short syllables following efficit makes dactylum a dactyl, ut as scribere to write.

Scansio *scanning* est is legitima commensuratio the measuring according to rule versus of a verse in singulos pedes in every one (or each one) of the feet.

Scansioni to scanning a verse accidunt there belong figuræ the figures called Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synæresis, Diaeresis, et and Cæsura.

Synalœpha, est is elisio the striking out vocalis of a vowel in fine at the end dictionis of a word ante alteram before another vowel in initio at the beginning sequentis

of the following word ; ut *as*, vit' viv' are here put pro for *vita vive*, in this verse : *Crastina vita to-morrow's life est is nimis sera too late, vive live hodie to-day.*

At but *heu*, et and *ô*, nunquam intercipiuntur are never struck out (or, cut off.)

Ecthipsis est is quoties as often as in the letter *m* perimitur is cut off cum suâ vocali with its vowel, proximâ dictione the next word exorsâ beginning a vocali with a vowel ; ut *as*, Monstr' horrend' pro for *monstrum horrendum* : *Monstrum a monster, horrendum horrible, informe mis-shapen, ingens vast, cui lumen ademptum deprived of sight.*

Synæresis, est is contractio the contraction duarum syllabarum of two syllables in unam into one ; ut *as*, alvearia is pronounced quasi scriptum esset as if it had been written *alvaria* : ut *as*, Seu or whether *alvearia the hives* *texta fuerint were wove* *lento vimine of the limber osier.*

Diæresis, est is ubi when ex unâ syllabâ of one syllable dissectâ being dissected (or, the letters separated) duæ two syllables fiunt are made ; ut *as*, evoluisse pro for *evoluisse* : ut *as*, Debuerant they ought *evoluisse to have unwound* *suos fusos their spindles.*

Cæsura, est is cùm when post pedem absolutum after a perfect foot syllaba brevis a short syllable extenditur is made long in fine dictionis at the end of the word ; ut *as*, Inhians intent upon *pectoribus the breasts* (of the victims) *consulit she consults* *spirantia exta their panting entrails.*

VERSUS heroicus an heroic verse, qui which dicitur etiam is also called Hexameter an Hexameter, constat consists ex sex pedibus of six feet : Quintus locus the fifth place of the verse peculiariter peculiarly sibi vindicat claims to itself dactylum a dactyl, sextus the sixth place requires spondæum a spondee ; reliqui the other places hunc vel illum have this or that foot (either a dactyl or a spondee) prout volumus even as we will ; ut *as*, Tityre o Tityrus, tu thou recubans lying along sub tegmine under the covering *patulæ fagi of a wide-spreading beech-tree.*

Spondæus a spondee etiam also aliquando sometimes reperitur is found in quinto loco in the fifth place; ut as, Cara soboles thou dear offspring deûm of the gods, magnum incrementum the illustrious progeny Jovis of Jupiter!

Ultima syllaba the last syllable cujuscunque versûs of every verse habetur is accounted communis common.

VERSUS elegiacus an elegiac verse, qui et which also habet hath nomen the name Pentametri of Pentameter, constat consisteth è duplici Penthemimeri of two Penthemimers; quarum prior the former of which comprehendit contains duos pedes two feet, dactylicos dactyls, spondiacos spondees, vel or alterutros either of them, cum syllabâ longâ with a long syllable: altera the other Penthemimer etiam contains also duos pedes two feet, sed but omninò dactylicos always (or, altogether) dactyls, item likewise cum syllabâ longâ with a long syllable; ut as, Amor love est is res a thing plena full solliciti timoris of anxious fear.

Of the Quantity of the first Syllable.

I. Vocalis a vowel ante duas consonantes before two consonants, aut or duplicem a double consonant in eadem dictione in the same word, est is ubique longa every where long positione by position; ut as in the words, ventus the wind, axis an axle-tree, patrizo to do like his father.

II. Quòd si but if consonans a consonant claudat endeth priorem dictionem the former word, sequente the following word item also inchoante beginning a consonante with a consonant, vocalis præcedens the vowel going before etiam also longa erit will be long positione by position; ut as, Major sum I am greater quàm than cui one whom fortuna fortune possit is able nocere to hurt. Syllabæ the syllables jor, sum, quàm, et and sit, longæ sunt are here long positione by position.

(a.) *At si but if prior dictio the former word exeat ends in vocalem brevem in a short vowel*, sequente the

following word incipiente beginning a duabus consonantibus with two consonants, interdum sometimes producitur it is made long, sed but rariùs very seldom ; ut as, Ferte bring ferrum arms citi promptly, date tela hurl your javelins, scandite muros scale the walls.

III. *Vocalis brevis a short vowel ante mutam before a mute, sequente liquidâ a liquid following, redditur is rendered communis common ; ut as in the words, pãtris of a father, volûcris of a bird. Quæ tamen regula which rule however non obtinet does not prevail in compositis in compound words ; ut as, admiror I admire, âbripio I carry off, sũbruo I overthrow, ôbruo I overthrow.*

VOCALIS *a vowel ante alteram before another vowel in eâdem dictione in the same word est is ubique brevis every where short ; ut as in the words, Deus God, meus mine, tuus thine, pius pious.*

Excipias you may except genitivos the genitive cases in ius ending in ius ; ut as, unius of one, illius of that, &c. and some others ; ubi in which words i the vowel i reperitur is found communis common ; licet although in alterius in the word alterius of another semper sit it is always brevis short ; in aliùs in the word aliùs of another semper longa it is always long.

Excipiendi sunt etiam except likewise genitivi the genitive cases et and dativi the dative quintæ declinationis of the fifth declension, ubi e where the vowel e inter geminum i between two i's longa fit is made long ; ut as in the word faciei of a face : alioqui non otherwise not, ut as in the words rei of a thing, spei of hope, fidei of faith.

Etiam also fi the syllable fi in fio in the word fio to be made or done est longa is long ; nisi unless e et r the letters e and r sequuntur follow simul together, ut as in fierem, fieri : Jam now omnia all things fiunt are done, quæ which negabam I denied posse were able fieri to be done.

Dius heavenly habet hath primam syllabam the first syllable longam long ; Diana the goddess Diana communem hath the first syllable common.

Interjectio Ohe the interjection ohe habet has priorem syllabam the former syllable communem common.

Eheu alas semper always producit penultimam makes the penultima long.

Vocalis a vowel ante alteram before another in Græcis dictionibus in Greek words subinde now and then fit longa is made long ; ut as, Dicite Pierides say O ye Muses: Respice Laërten have regard to Laertes.

Et and also in Græcis possessivis in Greek possessives ; ut as, Æneia nutrix Æneas' nurse, Rhodopeius Orpheus Orpheus of Rhodope.

Omnis diphthongus every diphthong longa est is long apud Latinos with the Latins ; ut as, aurum gold, neuter neither, musæ of a song, or songs : nisi except sequente vocali when a vowel followeth, cum when interdum sometimes corripitur it is made short ; ut as, præire to go before, præustus burnt at one end.

DERIVATIVA *derivatives (or, words derived of others) ferè commonly sortiuntur have eandem quantitatem the same quantity cum primitivis with their primitives (or, the words they are derived from ;) ut as, amator a lover, amicus a friend, amabilis amiable ; primâ brevi the first syllable being short ab amo as being derived from the verb amo I love.*

Exciuntur tamen except however pauca a few words quæ which deducta being derived a brevibus from short syllables, producant make long primam syllabam the first syllable ; ut as, como to deck the hair, a coma derived from coma the hair ; fomes fuel et and fomentum an assuaging plaister a from foveo to cherish ; humanus human, or humane, ab homo derived from homo a man or woman ; jucundus pleasant, a from juvo to delight ; jumentum a beast of burthen, a from juvo to help ; lex legis a law, a from lego to read ; macero to cause to waste

away, a from macer thin; mobilis moveable, a from moveo to move; persona a mask, a from persono to sound through; rex regis a king, regina a queen, regula a rule, a from rego to rule; secius (comparative) a from secus otherwise; sedes a seat, a from sedeo to sit; stipendium pay a from stips stipsis a coin; tegula a tile, a from tego to cover; tragula a javelin (also a drag-net,) a from traho to draw; vox vocis a voice, a from voco to call.

Et and contrà on the other hand sunt there are some words quæ which deducta though derived a longis from primitives of a long syllable, corripiunt make short primam the first syllable: ut as, arena sand, arista the beard of corn, arundo a reed, ab derived from areo to be dry; aruspex a soothsayer, ab derived from ara an altar; dicax a jester, maledicus speaking ill, a from dico to speak; ditio power, a from ditis rich; dux ducis a leader, a from duco to lead; fides faith, perfidus perfidious, a from fido to trust; fragor a noise or crash, fragilis frail, a from frango to break; labo to totter a from labor to slip; lucerna a candle, a from luceo to shine; molestus troublesome, a from moles trouble; odium hatred, ab from odi to hate; paciscor to bargain, a from pax pacis peace; quandoquidem since, a from quando when; siquidem since, a from si if; sopor a sound sleep, a from sopio to lay asleep.

Et and alia nonnulla some other words ex utroque genere of either sort, quæ which relinquuntur are left observanda to be observed studiosis by the studious inter legendum in their reading.

COMPOSITA *compound words sequuntur follow quantitatem the quantity simplicium of their simple words: ut as, a from lego legis to read, comes perlego to read through; a from lego legas to send as an ambassador, allego to allege or accuse by messengers; a from potens powerful, impotens weak; a from solor to cheer, consolor to comfort.*

Hæc tamen brevia but these words having short

syllables enata though derived a longis from long syllables excipiuntur are excepted: ut as, deiero to swear a great oath, pejero to forswear, a from juro to swear; innuba unmarried, pronuba a bride-maid, a from nubo to be married.

OMNE præteritum *every preterperfect tense dissyllabum of two syllables habet hath priorem the former syllable longam long: ut as, legi I have read, emi I have bought, movi I have moved.*

1. Excipias tamen *but you must except the words, bibi I drank, dedi I gave, scidi I have cut, steti I have stood, stiti I have stayed, tuli I have borne or suffered, et and fidi, a from findo to cleave.*

2. Geminantia *words that double primam the first syllable præteriti of the preterperfect tense habent have primam the first syllable brevem short; ut as, cecidi I have fallen, a from cado to fall; cecidi I have beaten, a from cædo to beat; didici I have learned, fefelli I have deceived, momordi I have bitten, pependi I have weighed, pupugi I have pricked, tetendi I have stretched, tetigi I have touched, totondi I have sheared, tutudi I have thumped.*

SUPINUM dissyllabum *a supine of two syllables habet hath priorem the former syllable longam long: ut as, visum to see, latum to bear or suffer, lotum to wash, motum to move.*

Excipe *except datum to give, itum to go, litum to daub, ratum to suppose, rutum to rush, satum to sow, situm to suffer, statum to stop, et and citum a from cieo cies to stir up; nam for citum, a from cio cis to make to go, quartæ of the fourth conjugation, habet hath priorem the former syllable longam long.*

Penultima *the last syllable but one tertiæ personæ pluralis of the third person plural perfecti activi of the perfect active desinens ending in -erunt habenda est is to be considered communis common, si if antepenultima the syllable before it brevis sit be short.*

I. A FINITA words ending in a *producuntur* are made long: ut *as*, ama love thou, contra against, erga towards.

Excipias except, ita so, quia because, eia well. Item also omnes casus all cases in a ending in a, cujuscunque fuerint generis of whatever gender they are, numeri number, aut or declinationis declension; præter except vocativos the vocative cases a Græcis in as of Greek words ending in as; ut *as*, O Ænea o Æneas: et and ablativum the ablative case primæ declinationis of the first declension; ut *as*, musâ with a song.

II. Desinentia words ending in b, d, t, puris pure, brevia sunt are short: ut *as*, ab from, ad to, caput the head.

III. Desinentia in c words ending in c *producuntur* are made long: ut *as*, ac and, sic so, et and adverbium the adverb hic here.

Sed but fac do thou, nec neither, donec until, corripiuntur are made short.

Pronomen hic the pronoun hic he, et and neutrum ejus its neuter hoc, modo so that non sit it be not ablativi casûs of the ablative case, communia sunt are common.

IV. Finita e words ending in e brevia sunt are short: ut *as*, mare the sea, pene almost, lege read thou, scribe write thou.

Omnes voces all words quintæ inflectionis of the fifth declension in e ending in e excipiendæ sunt are to be excepted: ut *as*, fide the ablative case of fides faith, et and die in the day, una cum particulis together with the particles inde enatis that are derived of it: ut *as*, hodie to-day, quotidie daily, pridie the day before, postridie the day after; item also quare wherefore, et and si qua sunt similia if there be any of the like sort.

Et item and also secundæ personæ singulares the second persons singular secundæ conjugationis of the second conjugation; ut *as*, doce teach, move move: præter

except cave *beware*, quod *which* plerumque generally corripit ultimam *makes the last syllable short*.

Etiam also monosyllaba *monosyllables* in e ending in e producuntur *are made long*; ut *as*, me *me*, te *thee*, se *himself or themselves*: præter *except* conjunctiones encliticas *the enclitical conjunctions*, que *and*, ne *whether*, ve *or*.

Quin et *and moreover* adverbia *adverbs* in e ending in e, deducta *derived* ab *adjectivis* *from adjectives* secundæ declinationis *of the second declension*, habent *have* e *the letter e* longum *long*: ut *as*, pulchre *beautifully*, docte *learnedly*, valde *pro* *for* valide *mightily*.

Quibus *to which* the *adverbs* ferme, fere, almost accedunt *are added*: tamen *yet* bene *well*, et *and* male *ill* omnino corripiuntur *are always made short*

Postremo *lastly*, quæ *such words as* scribuntur *are written* a Græcis per η *with the Greek letter η* (or, long e) producuntur *are long* naturâ *by nature*, cujuscunque fuerint casus *of whatever case they are*, generis *gender*, aut *or* numeri *number*: ut *as*, Lethe *the river so called*, Anchise *a proper name*, cete *whales*, Tempe *the name of a pleasant valley in Thessaly*.

V. Finita i *words ending in i* longa sunt *are long*: ut *as*, domini *lords*, magistri *masters*, amari *to be loved*.

Præter *except* mihi *to me*, tibi *to thee*, sibi *to himself or themselves*, ubi *where*, ibi *there*; quæ *which words* sunt *are communia* *common*.

Nisi *except*, et *and* quasi *as if*, corripiuntur *are made short*.

Dativi quoque *also the dative* et vocativi singulares *and vocative cases singular* nominum propriorum *of proper names* in is ending in is derivatorum *derived* a Græcis *from the Greeks*, quorum genitivus *whose genitive* crescit *increases* penultimâ brevi *with a short penultima*, corripiuntur *are short*: ut *as*, dativi *the dative cases* Minoidi, Palladi, Phyllidi; vocativi *the vocative cases* Alexi, Amarylli, Daphni, *all proper names*.

VI. Finita l *words ending in l* corripiuntur *are made*

short : ut *as*, animal *an animal*, Annibal *a proper name*, mel *honey*, pugil *a champion*, consul *a consul*.

Præter *except the words* nil (*contractum contracted a from nihil nothing*), sal *salt*, et *and* sol *the sun*.

VII. N finita *words ending in n corripuntur are short* ; ut *as*, an *whether*, carmen *a song*, in in, Ilion *Troy*, Ityn *Itys*.

Quin *moreover*, non *not*, excipiuntur *are excepted* ; et *and nomina pauca a few nouns derivata derived a Græcis from the Greeks quæ which producunt lengthen penultimam the penultima genitivi of the genitive* ; ut *as*, delphin *delphinis a dolphin* ; Xenophon *Xenophontis Xenophon*.

Accusativi quoque *also the accusative cases masculini masculine primæ declinationis of the first declension in an et en, ending in an and en* ; ut *as*, Ænean *Æneas*, Anchisen *Anchises* ; et *and accusativi foeminini feminine accusatives in en et ran in en and ran* ; ut *as*, Penelopen *Penelope*, Electran *Electra* : cæteri foeminini *the other feminine accusatives in an ending in an corripuntur are short* ; ut *as*, Maian *Maia*, Iphigenian *Iphigenia*.

VIII. O finita *words ending in o longa sunt are long* ; ut *as*, dico *I say*, virgo *a virgin*, porro *moreover*, legendo *in reading*.

Modo *only et and composita ejus its compounds excipiuntur are excepted* ; et *and scio I know*, nescio *I know not*, puto *I suppose*, cito *soon*, ego *I*, homo *a man*, cedo *tell me*, quæ *which corripuntur are short*.

(a.) Pauca alia sunt verba *there are a few other verbs in o desinentia ending in o quæ which interdum sometimes corripunt shorten ultimam the last syllable* ; ut *as*, Te peto *I demand you quem whom merui I have deserved*. Non ero *I will not be*, terra *o earth*, tuus *yours*. Fassa *confessing fortunam her fortune tegendo by covering vultus suos her face*. Sed *but hæc exempla these examples non sunt are not imitanda to be imitated a tironibus by beginners*.

Propria nomina *proper names* virorum of men desinentia in o ending in o communia sunt *are common*; ut as, Pollio, Naso.

Duo quoque *also* duo *two*, et *and* nemo *nobody* habent *have* ultimam *the last syllable* comunem *common*.

IX. Finita r words ending in r corripuntur *are made short*; ut as, Cæsar a *proper name*, per *by*, vir a *man*, uxor a *wife*, turtur a *turtle*.

Hæc autem *but these words* producuntur *are made long*; far *bread-corn*, Lar *an household god*, Nar *the river so called*, ver *the spring*, fur a *thief*, cur *why*; quoque *also* par *equal to or like* cum compositis *with its compounds*; ut as, compar a *companion*, impar *unequal*, dispar *unlike*.

Græca etiam *also Greek words* in er ending in er, quæ *which* illis *among them* desinunt end in np in the long ē before r; ut as, aër *the air*, crater a *cup*, character a *mark or sign*, æther *the sky*; præter *except* pater a *father* et *and* mater a *mother*, quæ *which* apud Latinos *with Latin authors* habent *have* ultimam *the last syllable* brevem *short*.

X. Finita s words ending in s habent *have* pares terminationes *the like terminations* cum numero *with the number* vocalium of the vowels; nempe *namely*, as, es, is, os, us, ys.

1. As finita words ending in as producuntur *are made long*; ut as, amas *thou lovest*, Musas *the Muses*, majestas *majesty*, bonitas *goodness*.

Præter *except* nomina propria Græca *Greek proper names*, quorum genitivus *whose genitive case* habet *has* penultimam *the penultima* brevem *short*; ut as, Arcas, Pallas, *proper names*, genitivo in the genitive case Arcados, Pallados.

Et *and* præter *except* accusativos plurales *the accusative cases plural* formatos *formed* Græco *more in the Greek manner*; ut as, heros a *hero*, heroas; gigas a *giant*, gigantas.

11. *Finita es words ending in es longa sunt are long*; ut *as*, Anchises the father of *Æneas*, *sedes* thou sittest, *doces* thou teachest, *patres* fathers.

Nomina in es nouns ending in es tertiæ inflectionis of the third declension, quæ which corripunt make short penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing excipiuntur are excepted; ut *as*, *miles* a soldier, *seges* standing corn, *dives* rich. Sed but *aries* a ram, *abies* a fir-tree, *paries* the wall of a house, *Ceres* the goddess of corn, et and *pes* a foot, *una cum compositis* together with its compounds, ut *as*, *bipes* having two feet, *tripes* having three, *longa sunt* are long.

Quoque also es thou art, a from sum I am, una cum compositis together with its compounds, corripitur is made short; ut *as*, *potes* thou art able, *ades* thou art present, *prodes* thou profitest, *obes* thou hinderest: quibus to which *penes* in the power of *potest* may adjungi be added.

Item also *neutra words of the neuter gender, et and nominativi plurales the nominative cases plural Græcorum of certain Greek words*; ut *as*, *hippomanes* a raging humour in mares, *cacoëthes* an ill habit, *Cyclopes* giants so called, *Naiades* fairies of rivers and fountains.

111. *Finita is words ending in is brevia sunt are short*; ut *as*, *Paris* a proper name, *panis* bread, *tristis* sorrowful, *hilaris* merry.

1. *Excipe except obliquos casus plurales the oblique cases plural in is ending in is, qui which producantur are made long*; ut *as*, *musis* the dative and ablative case plural of *musa* a muse or song, *mensis*, a of *mensa* a table, *dominis* lords, *templis* temples, et and *quibus*, pro for quibus whom.

2. Item also *producentia such words as make long penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing*; ut *as*, *Samnis* a Samnite, *Salamis* an isle by Athens; *genitivo in the genitive case, Samnitis, Salaminis.*

3. Et item *and also* omnia monosyllaba *all monosyllables*; ut *as*, vis *strength*, lis *strife*: præter *except* is he et *and* quis *who* nominativos *in the nominative case*, et *and* bis *twice* apud Ovidium *in Ovid*.

Secunda persona singularis *the second person singular* præsentis activi *of the present active* quartæ conjugationis *of the fourth conjugation* producit *is makes* is *long*; ut *as*, audis *you hear*; sic *so* possis *you may be able*, velis *you may be willing*, polis *you may be unwilling*, malis *you may prefer*.

Secundæ personæ singulares *the second persons singular* futuri secundi activi indicativi *of the second future indicative active*, et *and* perfecti subjunctivi *of the perfect subjunctive*, faciunt *make* is commune *is common*; ut *as*, feceris *you will have made*, dederis *you may have given*.

(a.) Porro *moreover* in his temporibus *in these tenses* secunda persona pluralis *the second person plural* habet *has* penultimam *the penultima* communem *common*; ut *as*, dixeritis *you will have said*, transieritis *you will have passed*.

Gratis *for nothing* et *and* foris *out of doors* producant ultimam *make the last syllable long*.

iv. Os finita *words ending in os* producuntur *are made long*; ut *as*, honos *honour*, nepos *a grandson*, dominos *lords*, servos *servants*.

Præter *except* compos *he that hath ability or power in something*, impos *that is unable, or not having power*, os ossis *a bone*, et *and* exos *without bones*.

Et *and* nomina propria *proper names* derivata *derived* a Græcis *from Greek names* in os; ut *as*, Delos *an isle in the Ægean sea*, Chaos *a confused heap of things*, Pallados *the genitive case of Pallas Minerva*, Phyllidos *the genitive case of Phyllis, a proper name*.

v. Us finita *words ending in us* corripuntur *are made short*; ut *as*, famulus *a man-servant*, regius *royal*, tempus *time*, amamus *we love*.

Producentia *words that make long* penultimam *the last*

syllable but one genitivi crescentis *of the genitive case increasing* excipiuntur *are excepted*; ut *as*, salus *health*, tellus *the earth*; genitivo *in the genitive case*, salutis, telluris.

Etiam *also* omnes voces *all words* quartæ inflectionis *of the fourth declension* in us ending in us longæ sunt *are long*, præter *except* nominativum *the nominative* et *and* vocativum *the vocative case* singulares in the singular number; ut *as*, genitivo singulari *in the genitive case singular* manûs *of a hand*; nominativo, accusativo, vocativo plurali *in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases plural* manus *hands*.

Etiam *also* monosyllaba *monosyllables* accedunt *are added* his *to these*; ut *as*, crus *the leg*, from the knee to the ankle, thus frankincense, mus *a mouse*, sus *a sow*.

Et item *and also* Græca *Greek words* per ouς diphthongum ending with the diphthong *ous*, cujuscunque fuerint casûs *of whatever case they be*; ut *as*, nominativo *in the nominative case* Panthus, Melampus, *proper names*; genitivo *in the genitive case*, Sapphus, Clîus, *proper names*.

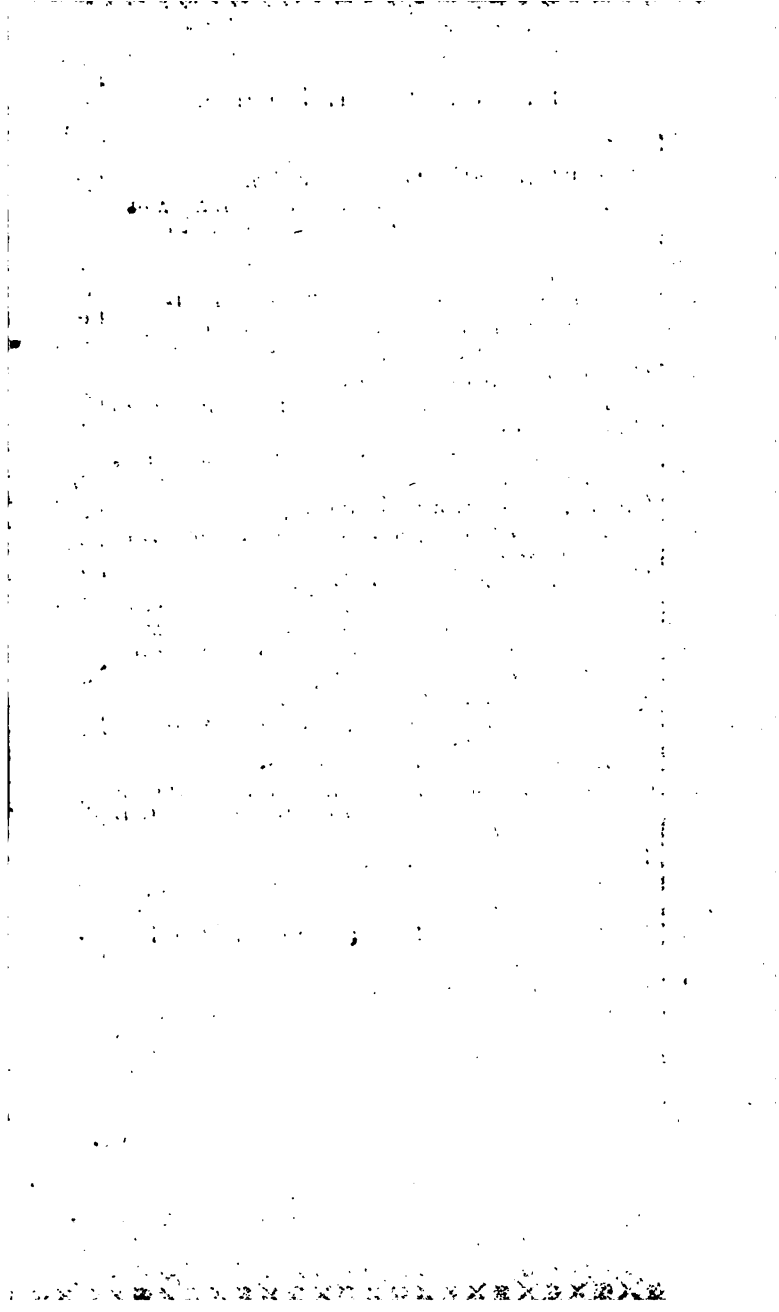
VI. Ys finita *words ending in ys* corripuntur *are short*; ut *us*, Itys *Itys*.

XI. U finita omnia *all words ending in u* producuntur *are made long*; ut *as*, manu *the ablative case of manus a hand*, genu *a knee*, amatu *to be loved*, diu *a long time*.

XII. Y finita nouns ending in y corripuntur *are short*; ut *as*, Tiphy *Tiphys*.

ERRATA.

Page 86, line 21,	Pro ponitus, lege	pontus.
„ 99, last line	„ voluptati	„ voluptata,
„ 116, last line but one	„ locari	„ locavi.



ETON SCHOOL BOOKS.

LATIN.

New Eton Latin Grammar, 2s.

Revised and Corrected by C. D. Yonge, B.A., Author of "English-Greek Lexicon," "Gradus ad Parnassum," etc.

Accidence, the;

Or First Rudiments of the Latin Tongue. Bd. 1s.

Cæsar's de Bello Gallico Commentaria.

Bd. 2s. 6d. (A much improved book.)

Catulli Carmina Selecta:

English Notes, by the Rev. W. G. Cookesley. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

Ciceronis Opuscula:

De Senectute, de Amicitia, Paradoxa, Somnium Scipionis. Bd. 2s. 6d.

Ciceronis Orationes Selectæ,

Textu ad Ed. Orellii, et Notis Anglice scriptis. 12mo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Cornelii Nepotis Vitæ Impp.

Textu, ad Ed. Fischeri, expurgato. 12mo. cloth, 3s. 6d. (English Notes, an Excursus on the Subjunctive Mood, and other useful additions have been made to the New Edition.)

Eton Latin Exercise Books:

I. Exempla Minora Latina; with Index of Words at end. 12mo. 2s.

II. Exempla Majora Latina. 12mo. 3s.

[N. B. The above Exercise Books are adapted to the Rules of the New Eton Latin Grammar, by C. D. Yonge, B.A.]

Eutropii Historia Romana,

Et Sex Aurelii Victoris liber. Bd. 2s. (Notes in English have been added at the end.)

Evangelia; sive Excerpta ex Novo Testamento. Bound, 1s. 6d.

Fasciculus Carminum,

Stylo Lucretiano scriptorum, auctoribus T. Gray, J. Keate, R. Smith, et G. Frere. 8vo. cloth, 4s. L. P. 4to, 7s. cloth, gilt edges.

Nomenclatura; or Nouns and Verbs in

English and Latin, for Declining and Conjugating. Bd. 1s. 6d.

Owen's Juvenal,

The Text collated, and Notes revised and corrected, by the Rev. R. L. Browne, late Fellow of King's College Cambridge. 12mo. cloth, 4s.

Ovidii Metamorph., Electa ex,

Cum Notis. Bd. 4s.

Ovidio et Tibullo, Electa ex,

Cum Notis, cloth, 3s. 6d. (A New Edition, the Text corrected and Notes improved.)

Ovidii Epistolæ selectæ,

Et expurg. Texta fere Burmanni. 8vo. cloth, 4s.

Phædri Fabulis, selecta e, et Veteri Testamento. Bd. 1s. 6d.

Propertii Carmina Selecta;

English Notes, by the Rev. W. G. Cookesley. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

Scriptores Romani;

Selecta ex Cicerone, Livio, Tacito, Paterculo, Plinio. 8vo, bd. 7s. 6d.

Selectæ e Veteri Testamento Historiæ;

2s. (A New Edition, much improved.)

Tursellini Historiæ;

Bd. 2s. 6d. (Scripture References and Dates in the Margin.)

~~~~~  
Outlines of Lectures on Ancient and

Modern History, on the Principles of the Church of England, by the Rev. C. J. Abraham, late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. cloth, 5s.

Historia Antiqua; containing the History

of the Heathen Deities, and Ancient Histories of Greece, Rome, and Britain. 12mo. bd. 4s.

Ancient Rome; a large Map of the Ancient

City, carefully engraved on Copper, with Explanatory Index, by the Rev. W. G. Cookesley, M.A. Second Edition, 5s.

[The Map may be had mounted on Canvass and Rollers, for School, Pupil-Room, or Study use: Price, with Index, 7s. 6d.]

